

D-Link DFL-1500

VPN/Firewall Router

User Manual

D-Link

Building Networks for People

© Copyright 2003 D-Link Systems, Inc. All rights reserved.

No part of this publication including text, examples, diagrams or illustrations may be reproduced, transmitted, or translated in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, manual, optical or otherwise, for any purpose, without prior written permission of D-Link Systems, Inc.

DFL-1500 User Manual

Version 2.000

September 15, 2004

Trademarks

Products mentioned in this document are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective holders.

Regulatory Compliance

FCC Class A Part 15 CSA/CUS

Table of Contents

Part I	Overview.....	2
Chapter 1	Quick Start	3
1.1	Check Your Package Contents.....	3
1.2	Five steps to configure DFL-1500 quickly	3
1.3	Wiring the DFL-1500	5
1.4	Default Settings and architecture of DFL-1500	6
1.5	Using the Setup Wizard	8
1.6	Internet Connectivity	11
1.6.1	LAN1-to-WAN1 Connectivity	11
1.6.2	WAN1-to-DMZ1 Connectivity	13
Chapter 2	System Overview	16
2.1	Typical Example Topology.....	16
2.2	Changing the LAN1 IP Address	17
2.2.1	From LAN1 to configure DFL-1500 LAN1 network settings.....	17
2.2.2	From CLI (command line interface) to configure DFL-1500 LAN1 network settings	18
2.3	The design principle.....	19
2.3.1	Web GUI design principle.....	19
2.3.2	Rule principle	19
Part II	Basic Configuration	21
Chapter 3	Basic Setup.....	23
3.1	Demand.....	23
3.2	Objectives	23
3.3	Methods	23
3.4	Steps.....	23
3.4.1	Setup WAN1 IP.....	23
3.4.2	Setup DMZ1, LAN1 Status	25
3.4.3	Setup WAN1 IP alias	27
Chapter 4	System Tools	29
4.1	Demand.....	29
4.2	Objectives	29
4.3	Methods	29
4.4	Steps.....	33
4.4.1	General settings	33
4.4.2	DDNS setting	36
4.4.3	DNS Proxy setting.....	37
4.4.4	DHCP Relay setting	37
4.4.5	SNMP Control.....	38
4.4.6	Change DFL-1500 interface	39
Chapter 5	Remote Management	41
5.1	Demands	41
5.2	Methods	41
5.3	Steps.....	42

5.3.1	Telnet.....	42
5.3.2	WWW	42
5.3.3	SNMP	42
5.3.4	ICMP	43
Chapter 6 Authentication		44
6.1	Demands	44
6.2	Methods	44
6.3	Steps.....	44
6.3.1	Local Setting	44
6.3.2	PoP3(s) Setting.....	46
6.3.3	Imap(s) Setting	46
6.3.4	Radius Setting	46
6.3.5	LDAP Setting	47
6.3.6	Exempt Host.....	47
Part III NAT 、Routing & Firewall		48
Chapter 7 NAT.....		49
7.1	Demands	49
7.2	Objectives	50
7.3	Methods	50
7.4	Steps.....	51
7.4.1	Setup Many-to-one NAT rules	51
7.4.2	Setup Virtual Server for the FtpServer1	55
7.5	NAT modes introduction	57
7.5.1	Many-to-One type	57
7.5.2	Many-to-Many type.....	58
7.5.3	One-to-One type	59
7.5.4	One-to-One (bidirectional) type	59
7.5.5	NAT modes & types.....	60
Chapter 8 Routing.....		61
8.1	Demands	61
8.2	Objectives	62
8.3	Methods	62
8.4	Steps.....	62
8.4.1	Add a static routing entry	62
8.4.2	Add a policy routing entry.....	64
Chapter 9 Firewall		67
9.1	Demands	67
9.2	Objectives	67
9.3	Methods	68
9.4	Steps.....	68
9.4.1	Setup Address.....	68
9.4.2	Setup Service.....	70
9.4.3	Setup Schedule	72
9.4.4	Setup IP/MAC binding	73
9.4.5	Block internal PC session (LAN à WAN).....	75
9.4.6	Setup Alert detected attack.....	78

Part IV	Virtual Private Network.....	80
Chapter 10	VPN Technical Introduction	81
10.1	VPN benefit	81
10.2	Related Terminology Explanation	81
10.2.1	VPN.....	81
10.2.2	IPSec	81
10.2.3	Security Association.....	81
10.2.4	IPSec Algorithms	81
10.2.5	Key Management	82
10.2.6	Encapsulation	83
10.2.7	IPSec Protocols	83
10.3	Make VPN packets pass through DFL-1500	84
Chapter 11	Virtual Private Network – IPSec	85
11.1	Demands	85
11.2	Objectives	85
11.3	Methods	85
11.4	Steps.....	86
<input type="checkbox"/>	DES/MD5 IPSec tunnel: the IKE way	86
<input type="checkbox"/>	DES/MD5 IPSec tunnel: the Manual-Key way.....	95
Chapter 12	Virtual Private Network –Dynamic IPSec	102
12.1	Demands	102
12.2	Objectives	102
12.3	Methods	102
12.4	Steps.....	103
Chapter 13	Virtual Private Network – DS-601 VPN client.....	109
13.1	Demands	109
13.2	Objectives	109
13.3	Methods	109
13.4	Steps.....	109
Chapter 14	Virtual Private Network – Hub and Spoke VPN.....	121
14.1	Demands	121
14.2	Objectives	121
14.3	Methods	121
14.4	Steps.....	122
Chapter 15	Virtual Private Network – PPTP	127
15.1	Demands	127
15.2	Objectives	127
15.3	Methods	127
15.4	Steps.....	128
15.4.1	Setup PPTP Network Server	128
15.4.2	Setup PPTP Network Client	129
Chapter 16	Virtual Private Network – L2TP	131
16.1	Demands	131
16.2	Objectives	131
16.3	Methods	131

16.4	Steps.....	132
16.4.1	Setup L2TP Network Server	132
Part V	Content Filters	136
Chapter 17	Content Filtering – Web Filters	137
17.1	Demands	137
17.2	Objectives	138
17.3	Methods	138
17.4	Steps.....	139
17.5	Setting priorities.....	144
Chapter 18	Content Filtering – Mail Filters	147
18.1	Demands	147
18.2	Objectives	147
18.3	Methods	147
18.4	Steps for SMTP Filters	148
18.5	Steps for POP3 Filters.....	149
Chapter 19	Content Filtering – FTP Filtering.....	151
19.1	Demands	151
19.2	Objectives	151
19.3	Methods	151
19.4	Steps.....	152
Part VI	Intrusion Detection System	156
Chapter 20	Intrusion Detection Systems	157
20.1	Demands	157
20.2	Objectives	157
20.3	Methods	157
20.4	Steps.....	158
Part VII	Bandwidth Management 、 High Availability	160
Chapter 21	Bandwidth Management	161
21.1	Demands	161
21.2	Objectives	162
21.3	Methods	163
21.4	Steps.....	164
21.4.1	Inbound Traffic Management.....	164
21.4.2	Outbound Traffic Management	169
Chapter 22	High Availability	171
22.1	Demands	171
22.2	Objectives	171
22.3	Methods	172
22.4	Steps.....	172
22.4.1	Setup High Availability.....	172
Part VIII	System Maintenance	174
Chapter 23	System Status	175
23.1	Demands	175
23.2	Objectives	175
23.3	Methods	175

23.4	Steps.....	175
Chapter 24 Log System		179
24.1	Demands	179
24.2	Objectives	179
24.3	Methods	179
24.4	Steps.....	179
24.4.1	System Logs	179
24.4.2	Syslog & Mail log	180
Chapter 25 System Maintenance		183
25.1	Demands	183
25.2	Steps for TFTP Upgrade	183
25.3	Steps for Firmware upgrade from Web GUI.....	184
25.4	Steps for Database Update from Web GUI.....	185
25.5	Steps for Factory Reset	186
25.5.1	Step for factory reset under web GUI.....	186
25.5.2	Step for NORMAL factory reset	186
25.5.3	Steps for EMERGENT factory reset	186
25.6	Save the current configuration	187
25.7	Steps for Backup / Restore Configurations	187
25.8	Steps for Reset password	188
Appendix.....		190
Appendix A Command Line Interface (CLI).....		191
A.1	Enable the port of DFL-1500.....	191
A.2	CLI commands list (Normal Mode)	191
A.3	CLI commands list (Rescue Mode)	193
Appendix B Trouble Shooting		195
Appendix C System Log Syntax		201
Appendix D Glossary of Terms		209
Appendix E Index		211
Appendix F Hardware.....		212
Appendix G Version of Software and Firmware		215
Appendix H Customer Support		217

Part I

Overview

Chapter 1

Quick Start

This chapter introduces how to quick setup the DFL-1500.

DFL-1500 is an integrated all-in-one solution that can facilitate the maximum security and the best resource utilization for the enterprises. It contains a high-performance stateful packet inspection (SPI) **Firewall**, policy-based **NAT**, ASIC-based wire-speed **VPN**, upgradeable **Intrusion Detection System**, **Dynamic Routing**, **Content Filtering**, **Bandwidth Management**, **WAN Load Balancer**, **High Availability** and other solutions in a single box. It is one of the most cost-effective all-in-one solutions for enterprises.

1.1 Check Your Package Contents

These are the items included with your DFL-1500 purchase as Figure 1-1. They are the following items

1. DFL-1500 Device * 1
2. Ethernet cable (RJ-45) * 1
3. RS-232 console * 1
4. CD (include User's manual and Quick Guide) * 1
5. Power cord * 1



Figure 1-1 All items in the DFL-1500 package

1.2 Five steps to configure DFL-1500 quickly

Let's look at the common network topology without DFL-1500 applying like Figure 1-2. This is a topology which is almost used by all the small/medium business or SOHO use as their internet connectivity. Although that your topology is not necessarily the same diagram below, but it still can give you a guideline to configure DFL-1500 quickly.

Part I Overview

Now you can pay attention at the IP Sharer in the diagram. The IP Sharer can provide you with NAT (Network Address Translation), PAT (Port Address Translation) and other functions.

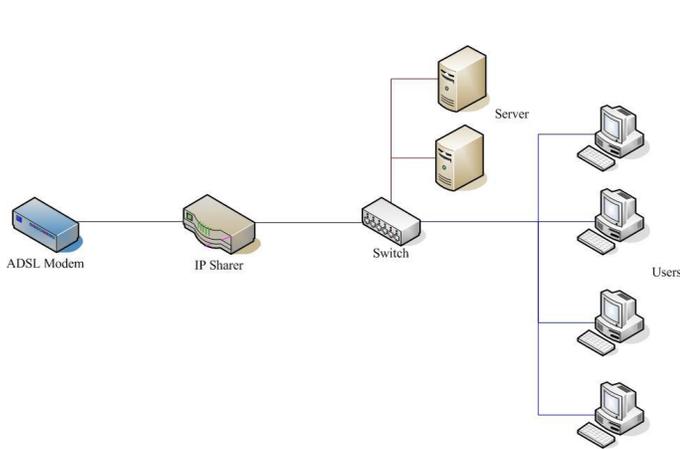


Figure 1-2 The example before DFL-1500 applies on it

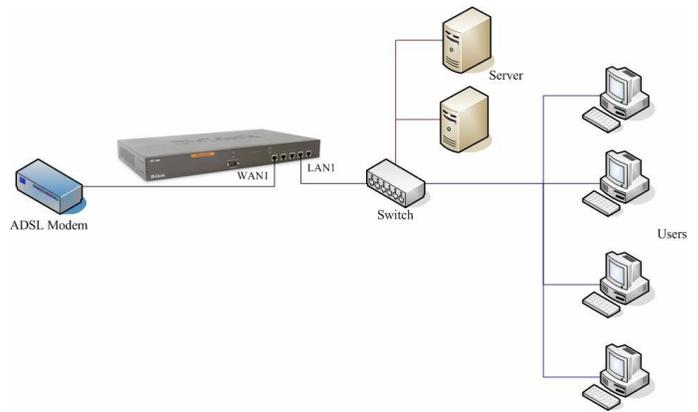


Figure 1-3 The example after DFL-1500 applies on it

Here we would like to alter the original IP Sharer with the DFL-1500 like Figure 1-3. If we hope to have DFL-1500 to replace the IP Sharer, we just need to simply execute the following five steps as Figure 1-4 showed. By these steps, we hope to build an image to tell you how to let DFL-1500 work basically.

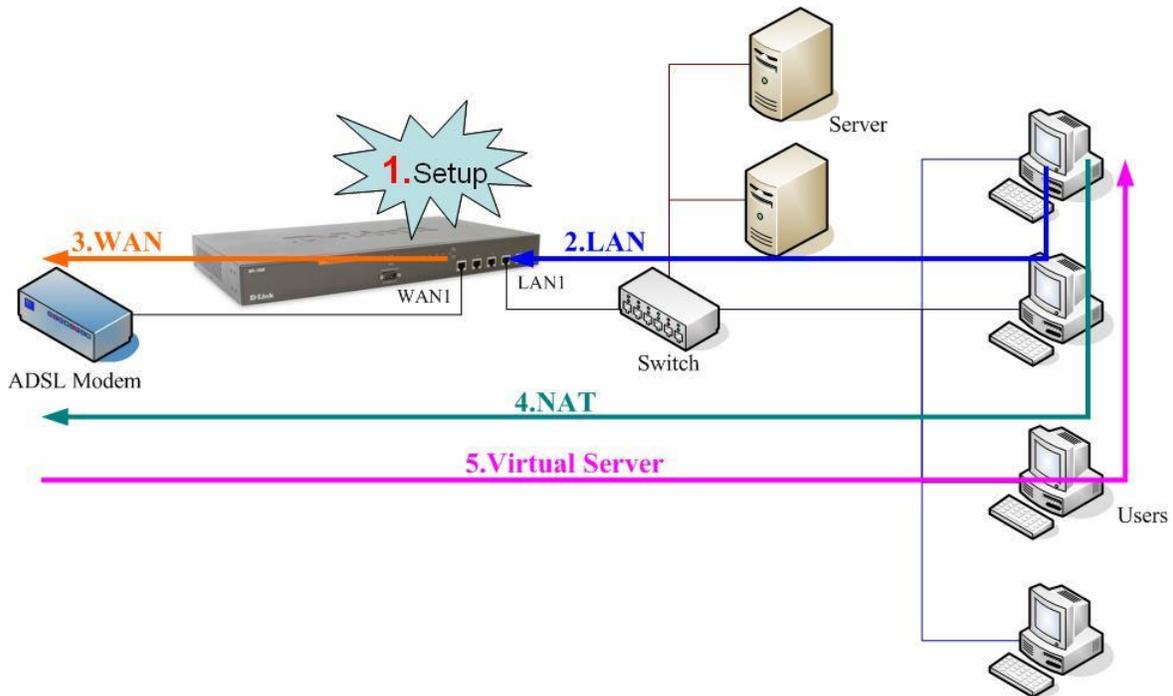


Figure 1-4 Five steps to configure DFL-1500

As the Figure 1-4 illustrated, with the five-step configurations, DFL-1500 will have the same functions with the original IP Sharer. Please see the following description of the five-step configurations.

1. **Setup:**
Install three physical lines inclusive of the power cord, outbound link (connected WAN1 port) and inbound direction (connected LAN1 port). For the details, please refer section 1.3.
Continually, we will connect to the web GUI of DFL-1500. So you must make sure that you have a PC which is located in the same subnet with DFL-1500 before this step. Note: The default LAN1 port is (192.168.1.254 / 255.255.255.0). Refer to section 1.5 for more information.
2. **LAN:**
Configure the LAN1 port of DFL-1500. You can refer to section 1.4 for the default network configurations of DFL-1500.
Note: If you were connected from LAN1 port and changed the LAN1 IP address settings of DFL-1500. The network will be disconnected since the IP address is different between your pc and DFL-1500 LAN1 port.
3. **WAN:**
Configure the WAN1 port of DFL-1500. You can refer to section 1.4 for the default network configurations of DFL-1500.
4. **NAT:**
Configure the connection of LAN to WAN direction. It will make all the client pc access the internet through DFL-1500. For more information, please refer to section 1.6.1.
5. **Virtual Server:**
If there is any server located inside the DFL-1500. You may hope these servers can provide services outside. So you should configure the Virtual Server which provides connections of WAN to LAN direction. For more information, please refer to section 1.6.2.

After you completely finished the above steps, the connectivity function of DFL-1500 is probably well-done.

1.3 Wiring the DFL-1500

- A.** First, connect the power cord to the socket at the back panel of the DFL-1500 as in Figure 1-5 and then plug the other end of the power adapter to a wall outlet or power strip. The Power LED will turn **ON** to indicate proper operation.



Figure 1-5 Back panel of the DFL-1500

- B.** Using an Ethernet cable, insert one end of the cable to the WAN port on the front panel of the DFL-1500 and the other end of the cable to a DSL or Cable modem, as in Figure 1-6.
- C.** Computers with an Ethernet adapter can be directly connected to any of the LAN ports using a cross-over Ethernet cable, as in Figure 1-6.
- D.** Computers that act as servers to provide Internet services should be connected to the DMZ port using an Ethernet Cable, as in Figure 1-6.

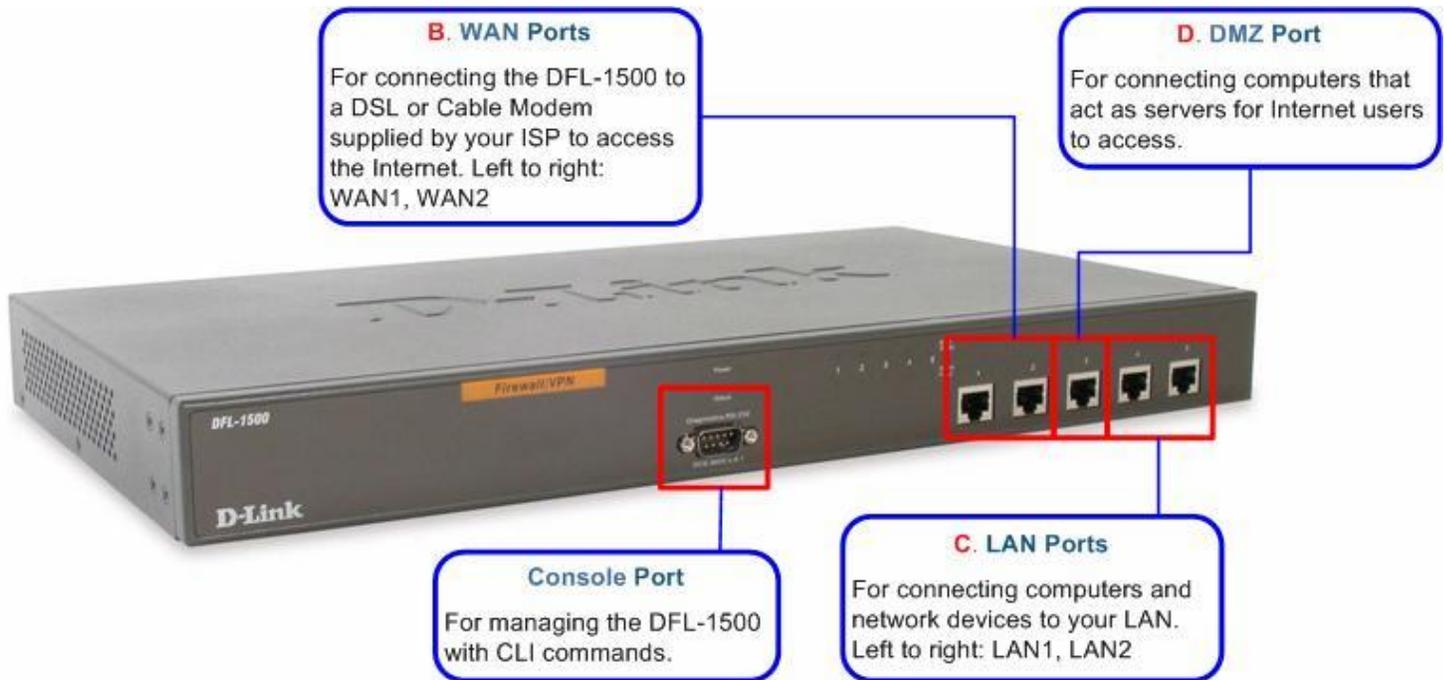


Figure 1-6 Front end of the DFL-1500

1.4 Default Settings and architecture of DFL-1500

You should have an Internet account already set up and have been given most of the following information as Table 1-1. Fill out this table when you edit the web configuration of DFL-1500.

Items			Default value	New value
Password:			admin	
WAN1 (Port 1)	Fixed IP	IP Address	Not initialized	____.____.____.____
		Subnet Mask		____.____.____.____
		Gateway IP		____.____.____.____
		Primary DNS		____.____.____.____
		Secondary DNS		____.____.____.____
	PPPoE	PPPoE Username		____.____.____.____
		PPPoE Password		____.____.____.____
DHCP				
WAN2 (Port 2)	Fixed IP	IP Address	Not initialized	____.____.____.____
		Subnet Mask		____.____.____.____
		Gateway IP		____.____.____.____
		Primary DNS		____.____.____.____
		Secondary DNS		____.____.____.____

	PPPoE	PPPoE Username		_____
		PPPoE Password		_____
	DHCP			
DMZ1(Port 3)	IP Address	10.1.1.254	_____	
	IP Subnet Mask	255.255.255.0	_____	
LAN1(Port 4)	IP Address	192.168.1.254	_____	
	IP Subnet Mask	255.255.255.0	_____	
LAN2(Port 5)	IP Address	192.168.2.254	_____	
	IP Subnet Mask	255.255.255.0	_____	

Table 1-1 DFL-1500 related network settings

Organization_1

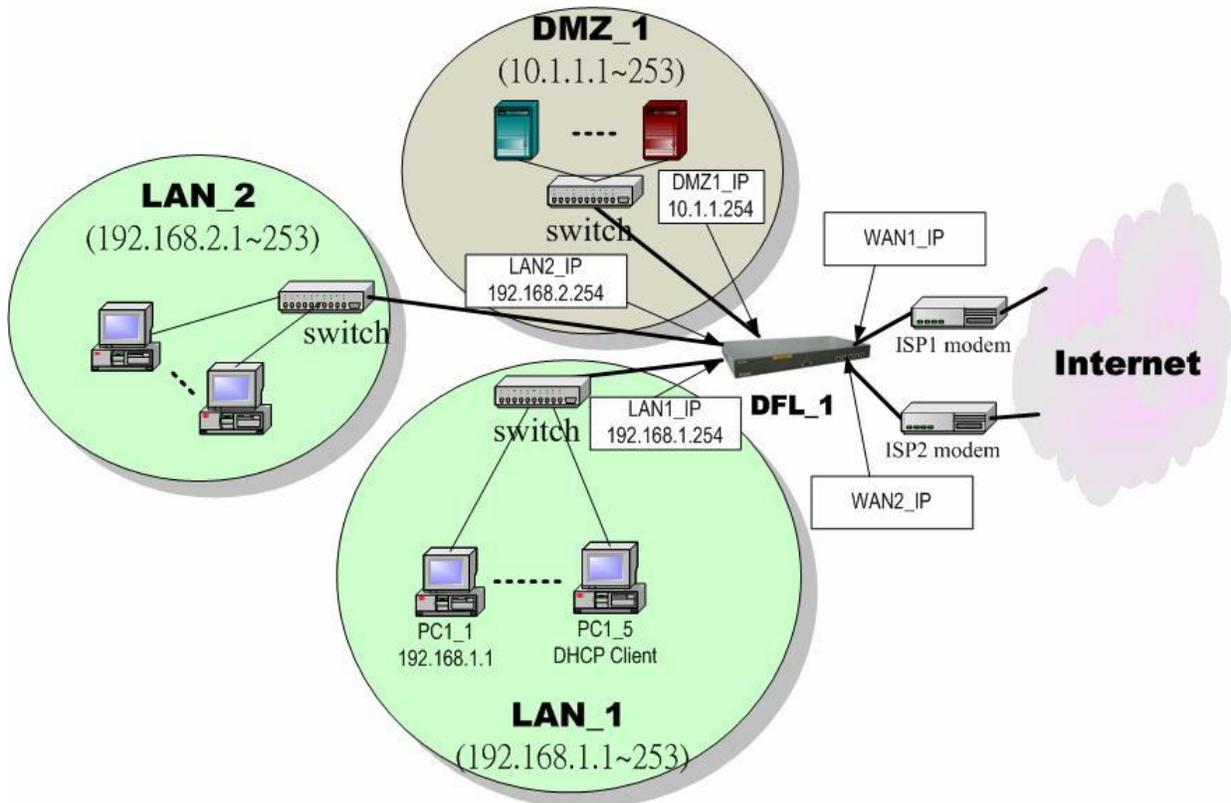


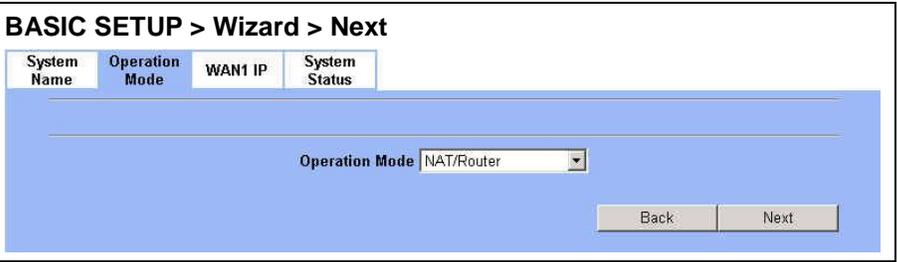
Figure 1-7 The default settings of DFL-1500

As the above diagram Figure 1-7 illustrated, this diagram shows the default topology of DFL-1500. And you can configure the DFL-1500 by connecting to the LAN1_IP (192.168.1.254) from the PC1_1 (192.168.1.1). In the following sections, we will teach you how to quickly setup the DFL-1500 in the basic appliances.

1.5 Using the Setup Wizard

A computer on your LAN1 must be assigned an IP address and Subnet Mask from the same range as the IP address and Subnet Mask assigned to the DFL-1500 in order to be able to make an HTTPS connection using a web browser. The DFL-1500 is assigned an IP address of 192.168.1.254 with a Subnet Mask of 255.255.255.0 by default. The computer that will be used to configure the DFL-1500 must be assigned an IP address between 192.168.1.1 and 192.168.1.253 with a Subnet Mask of 255.255.255.0 to be able to connect to the DFL-1500. This address range can be changed later. There are instructions in the DFL-1500 Quick Installation Guide, if you do not know how to set the IP address and Subnet Mask for your computer.

<p>Step 1. Login</p> <p>Type "admin" in the account field, "admin" in the Password field and click Login.</p> <p>Note: Please do not access web UI through proxy, or the login may be locked by others or the original user.</p>	<p>Connect to https://192.168.1.254</p> 
<p>Step 2. Run Setup Wizard</p> <p>Click the Run Setup Wizard.</p>	<p>After login to https://192.168.1.254</p> <p>BASIC SETUP > Wizard</p> <p>Welcome to the DFL-1500 Web-Based Configuration !</p> <p>Basic Setup Connect to the Internet and configure your Intranet with the Setup Wizard (WAN, LAN and DMZ settings, routing protocol and DHCP server settings).</p> <p>System Tools Setup DDNS, DNS proxy, DHCP relay, system password/time/date/timeouts, protocol services, interface types, perform firmware upgrade, save running configurations, backup/restore configurations, reset to factory defaults, customize remote management and SNMP, schedule database update.</p> <p>Help Get help about your VPN/Firewall Router.</p> <p>Setup Wizard A step-by-step setup wizard will guide you to configure your VPN/Firewall Router to connect to your ISP (Internet Service Provider).</p> <p>Advanced Settings Access advanced features, including IPSec/L2TP/PPTP VPNs, VPN pass through, NAT, virtual servers, static/policy route, firewall, attack alert, web/mail/ftp filters, intrusion detection, and bandwidth management.</p> <p>Device Status Display system name, firmware version, interface IP settings, network status, CPU/memory utilization, DHCP/Routing table, active/top20/IPSec sessions. Setup logging systems, including system/firewall/IDS/content-filter/VPN logs.</p> <p>Run Setup Wizard</p>
<p>Step 3. System Name</p> <p>Enter the Host Name and the Domain Name, followed by clicking the Next.</p>	<p>BASIC SETUP > Wizard</p> 

<p>Step 4. Operation Mode</p> <p>DFL-1500 VPN/Firewall Router can operate in NAT/Router mode or Transparent mode. Choose which operation Mode for this device to use.</p>	<p>BASIC SETUP > Wizard > Next</p> 
--	--

NAT/Route mode	<p>In NAT/Route mode, you can create NAT mode rules and Route mode rules. For the related information, please refer to Chapter 6 and Chapter 7.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • NAT mode rules use network address translation to hide the addresses in a more secure network from users in a less secure network. • Route mode rules accept or deny connections between networks without performing address translation.
Transparent mode	<p>Transparent mode provides the same basic protection as NAT mode. Packets received by the DFL-1500 are intelligently forwarded or blocked according to firewall rules. The DFL-1500 can be inserted in your network at any point without the need to make any changes to your network or any of its components. However, VPN, NAT, Routing and some advanced firewall features (such as Authentication, IP/MAC Binding) are only available in NAT/Route mode.</p> <p>Note:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. You cannot connect the LAN1/LAN2/DMZ interfaces to the same Hub while using Transparent mode, otherwise the traffic from the PCs under LAN1/LAN2/DMZ interfaces may be blocked. 2. If you would like to change the operation mode from NAT/Route mode to Transparent mode, you have to backup the configuration file and then do the factory reset first.

<p>Step 5. WAN Connectivity</p> <p>Choose the type of IP Address Assignment provided by your ISP to access the Internet. Here we have four types to select. This will determine how the IP address of WAN1 is obtained. Click Next to proceed.</p>	<p>BASIC SETUP > Wizard > Next > WAN1 IP</p> 
---	---

Step 5.a — DHCP client

If Get IP Automatically (DHCP) is selected, DFL-1500 will request for IP address, netmask, and DNS servers from your ISP. You can use your preferred DNS by clicking the DNS IP Address and then completing the Primary DNS and Secondary DNS server IP addresses. Click Next to proceed.

BASIC SETUP > Wizard > Next > DHCP

System Name	Operation Mode	WAN1 IP	System Status
<p>IP Address Assignment Get IP Automatically (DHCP)</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Default WAN link (Gateway/DNS)</p> <p><input type="radio"/> Get DNS Automatically</p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> DNS IP Address</p> <p>Primary DNS: 168.95.1.1</p> <p>Secondary DNS: 0.0.0.0</p> <p>Routing Protocol: None</p> <p>OSPF Area ID: </p> <p>Back Next</p>			

Step 5.b — Fixed IP

If Fixed IP Address is selected, enter the ISP-given IP Address, Subnet Mask, Gateway IP, Primary DNS and Secondary DNS IP. Click Next to proceed.

BASIC SETUP > Wizard > Next > Fixed IP

System Name	Operation Mode	WAN1 IP	System Status
<p>IP Address Assignment Fixed IP Address</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Default WAN link (Gateway/DNS)</p> <p>IP Address: 61.2.1.1 Subnet Mask: 255.255.255.248</p> <p>Gateway IP: 61.2.1.6</p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> DNS IP Address</p> <p>Primary DNS: 168.95.1.1</p> <p>Secondary DNS: 0.0.0.0</p> <p>Routing Protocol: None</p> <p>OSPF Area ID: </p> <p>Back Next</p>			

Step 5.c — PPPoE client

If PPP over Ethernet is selected, enter the ISP-given User Name, Password and the optional Service Name. Click Next to proceed.

BASIC SETUP > Wizard > Next > PPPoE

System Name	Operation Mode	WAN1 IP	System Status
<p>IP Address Assignment PPP over Ethernet</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Default WAN link (Gateway/DNS)</p> <p>Service Name: (Optional)</p> <p>User Name: Hey</p> <p>Password: *****</p> <p><input type="radio"/> Get DNS Automatically</p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> DNS IP Address</p> <p>Primary DNS: 168.95.192.1</p> <p>Secondary DNS: 168.95.1.1</p> <p>Disconnected</p> <p>Back Next</p>			

Step 5.d — Alert Message

Please Note that an alert message box “When changing to none fixed ip mode, system will delete all ip alias!” will appear while you change Get IP Automatically (DHCP) or PPP over Ethernet but not Fixed IP Address as your WAN link.

**Step 6. System Status**

Here we select Fixed IP method in WAN1 port. Then the DFL-1500 provides a short summary of the system. Please check if anything mentioned above is properly set into the system. Click Finish to close the wizard.

BASIC SETUP > Wizard > Run Setup Wizard > Next > Next

System Name	Operation Mode	WAN1 IP	System Status
System Name: DFL-1500.dlink.com			
Firmware Version: NetOS Ver2.000 (WALL) #0: Wed Sep 1 05:56:36 CST 2004			
Software Serial Number: 60623576436830003320			
Operation Mode: NAT/Router			
Default gateway: 61.2.1.6			
Primary DNS: 168.95.1.1			
Secondary DNS:			
Port1: WAN1 (Static IP)[Default]	IP Address: 61.2.1.1	Subnet Mask: 255.255.255.248	
Port2: WAN2 (Not initialized)	IP Address: not set		
Port3: DMZ1	IP Address: 10.1.1.254	Subnet Mask: 255.255.255.0	
Port4: LAN1	IP Address: 192.168.1.254	Subnet Mask: 255.255.255.0	
Port5: LAN2	IP Address: 192.168.2.254	Subnet Mask: 255.255.255.0	

Back

1.6 Internet Connectivity

After setting up DFL-1500 with the wizard, DFL-1500 can connect to the ISP. In this chapter, we introduce **LAN1-to-WAN1** Connectivity to explain how the computers under LAN1 can access the Internet at WAN1 through DFL-1500. Subsequently, we introduce **WAN1-to-DMZ1** Connectivity to explain how the servers under DMZ1 can be accessed by the LAN1 users and other Internet users on the WAN1 side.

You MUST press Apply to proceed to the next page. Once applying any changes, the settings are immediately updated into the flash memory.

1.6.1 LAN1-to-WAN1 Connectivity

The LAN Settings page allows you to modify the IP address and Subnet Mask that will identify the DFL-1500 on your LAN. This is the IP address you will enter in the URL field of your web browser to connect to the DFL-1500. It is also the IP address that all of the computers and devices on your LAN will use as their Default Gateway.

Step 1. Device IP Address
Setup the IP Address and IP Subnet Mask for the DFL-1500.

Step 2. Client IP Range
Enable the DHCP server if you want to use DFL-1500 to assign IP addresses to the computers under LAN1. Specify the Pool Starting Address, Pool Size, Primary DNS, and Secondary DNS that will be assigned to them.
Example: in the figure, the DFL-1500 will assign one IP address from 192.168.1.100 ~ 192.168.1.119, together with the DNS server 192.168.1.254, to the LAN1 PC that requests for an IP address.

Step 3. Apply the Changes
Click **Apply** to save. Now you can enable the DHCP clients on your LAN1 PCs to get an IP.

Step 4. Check NAT Status
The default setting of NAT is in Basic Mode. After completing Step 3, the NAT is automatically configured related rules to let all private-IP LAN/DMZ-to-WAN requests to be translated with the public IP assigned by the ISP.

Step 5. Check NAT Rules
The DFL-1500 has added the NAT rules as the right diagram. The rule **Basic-LAN1** means that, when matching the condition (requests of LAN/DMZ-to-WAN direction with its source IP falling in the range of 192.168.1.254 / 255.255.255.0), the request will be translated into a public-source-IP requests, and then be forwarded to the destinations.

BASIC SETUP > LAN Settings > LAN1 Status

LAN1 Status **LAN2 Status** IP Alias

LAN1 TCP/IP
IP Address: 192.168.1.254 IP Subnet Mask: 255.255.255.0

DHCP Setup

Enable DHCP Server

IP Pool Starting Address: 192.168.1.100
Pool Size(max size: 253): 20
Primary DNS Server: 192.168.1.254
Secondary DNS Server: 0.0.0.0
Lease time(sec): 7200

Routing Protocol: None
OSPF Area ID:

Apply

Note: The IP Pool Starting Address must be on the same subnet specified in the IP Address and the IP Subnet Mask field. For example, the addresses given by the 192.168.1.100 with a pool size of 20 (192.168.1.100 ~ 192.168.1.119) are all within the same range of 192.168.1.254 / 255.255.255.0

ADVANCED SETTINGS > NAT > Status

Status **NAT Rules** Virtual Servers

Network Address Translation Mode: Basic

Network Address Translation (NAT) translates the IP/port for

- Internal-to-External traffic:** map the conditioned internal IPs/ports into the specified external IPs/ports.
Reset NAT rules
- External-to-Internal traffic:** map the conditioned external IPs/ports into the specified internal IPs/ports.
Reset Server rules

Modes:

- None: The DFL-1500 is in routing mode without performing any address translation.
- Basic: The DFL-1500 automatically performs Many-to-One NAT for all LAN/DMZ subnet IP ranges.
- Full Feature: The DFL-1500 performs routing and NAT simultaneously. It performs several kinds of NAT on the conditioned IP subnet, while performing routing on other IP subnets.

Total Configured NAT Rules: 3
Vacant NAT Rules: 197
Total Configured Server Rules: 0
Vacant Server Rules: 200

Apply

ADVANCED SETTINGS > NAT > NAT Rules

Status **NAT Rules** Virtual Servers

NAT->Edit Rules

Packets are top-down matched by the rules.

Item #	Active	Name	Direction	Condition Source IP Address	Action Translate Src IP into	Type
1	Y	Basic-DMZ1	LAN/DMZ to WAN	10.1.1.254/255.255.255.0	Auto (device WAN IP)	M-1
2	Y	Basic-LAN2	LAN/DMZ to WAN	192.168.2.254/255.255.255.0	Auto (device WAN IP)	M-1
3	Y	Basic-LAN1	LAN/DMZ to WAN	192.168.1.254/255.255.255.0	Auto (device WAN IP)	M-1

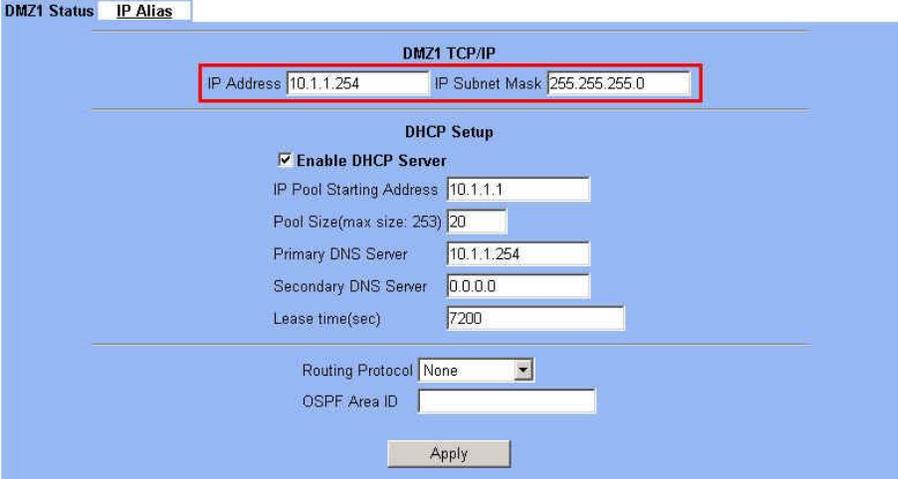
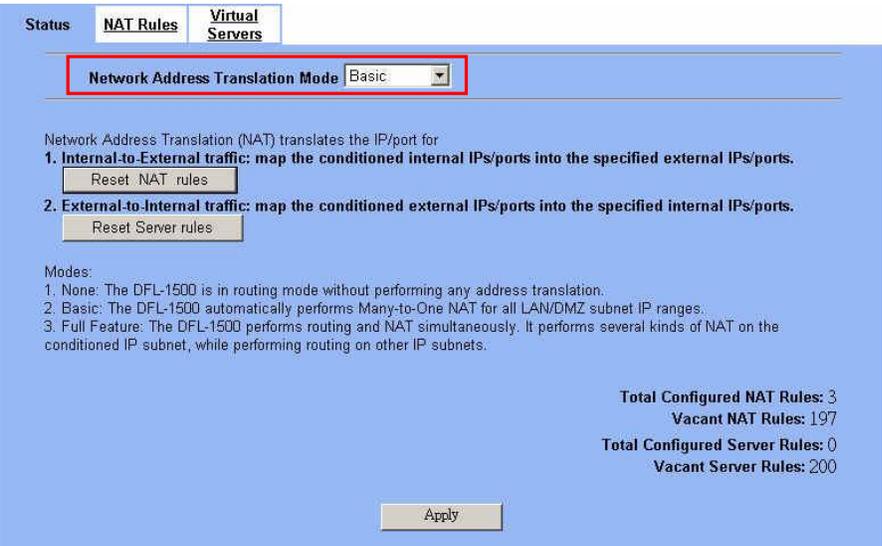
Page 1/1

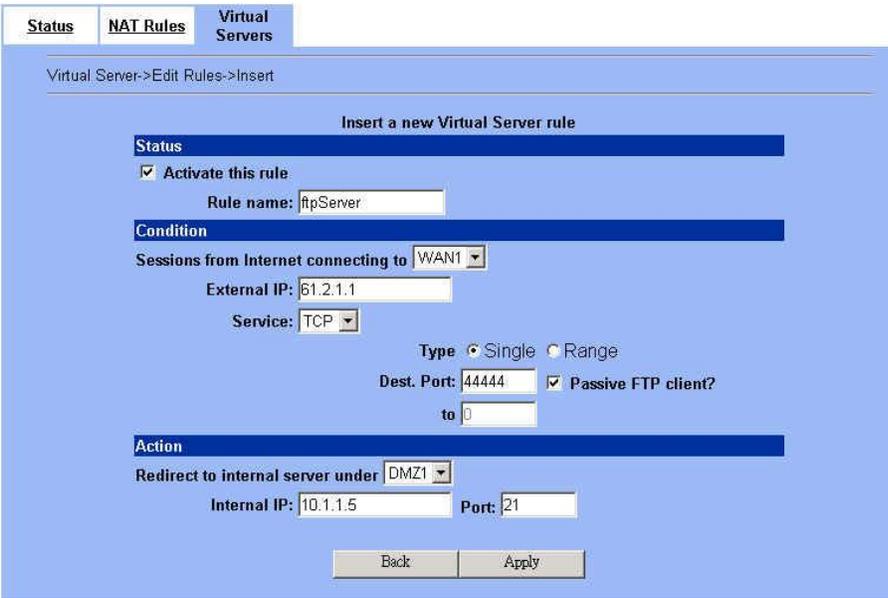
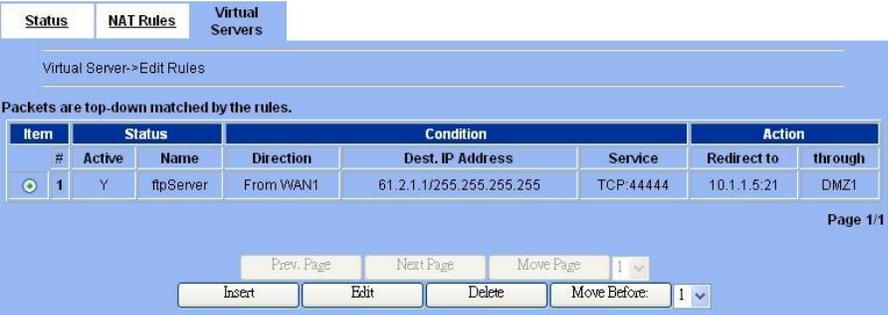
Prev. Page Next Page Move Page 1

Insert Edit Delete Move Before: 1

1.6.2 WAN1-to-DMZ1 Connectivity

This section tells you how to provide an FTP service with a server installed under your DMZ1 to the public Internet users. After following the steps, users at the WAN side can connect to the FTP server at the DMZ1 side.

<p>Step 1. Device IP Address Setup the IP Address and IP Subnet Mask for the DFL-1500 of the DMZ1 interface.</p>	<p>BASIC SETUP > DMZ Settings > DMZ1 Status</p> 																												
<p>Step 2. Client IP Range Enable the DHCP server if you want to use DFL-1500 to assign IP addresses to the computers under DMZ1.</p>	<p>ADVANCED SETTINGS > NAT > Status</p> 																												
<p>Step 3. Apply the Changes Click Apply to save your settings.</p>	<p>ADVANCED SETTINGS > NAT > NAT Rules</p>  <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Item</th> <th>Status</th> <th>Name</th> <th>Direction</th> <th>Condition</th> <th>Action</th> <th>Type</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Basic-DMZ1</td> <td>LAN/DMZ to WAN</td> <td>10.1.1.254/255.255.255.0</td> <td>Auto (device WAN IP)</td> <td>M-1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Basic-LAN2</td> <td>LAN/DMZ to WAN</td> <td>192.168.2.254/255.255.255.0</td> <td>Auto (device WAN IP)</td> <td>M-1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Basic-LAN1</td> <td>LAN/DMZ to WAN</td> <td>192.168.1.254/255.255.255.0</td> <td>Auto (device WAN IP)</td> <td>M-1</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Item	Status	Name	Direction	Condition	Action	Type	1	Y	Basic-DMZ1	LAN/DMZ to WAN	10.1.1.254/255.255.255.0	Auto (device WAN IP)	M-1	2	Y	Basic-LAN2	LAN/DMZ to WAN	192.168.2.254/255.255.255.0	Auto (device WAN IP)	M-1	3	Y	Basic-LAN1	LAN/DMZ to WAN	192.168.1.254/255.255.255.0	Auto (device WAN IP)	M-1
Item	Status	Name	Direction	Condition	Action	Type																							
1	Y	Basic-DMZ1	LAN/DMZ to WAN	10.1.1.254/255.255.255.0	Auto (device WAN IP)	M-1																							
2	Y	Basic-LAN2	LAN/DMZ to WAN	192.168.2.254/255.255.255.0	Auto (device WAN IP)	M-1																							
3	Y	Basic-LAN1	LAN/DMZ to WAN	192.168.1.254/255.255.255.0	Auto (device WAN IP)	M-1																							
<p>Step 4. Check NAT Status The default setting of NAT is in Basic Mode. After applying the Step 3, the NAT is automatically configured related rules to let all private-IP LAN/DMZ-to-WAN requests to be translated with the public IP assigned by the ISP.</p>	<p>Step 5. Check NAT Rules The DFL-1500 has added the NAT rules as the right diagram. The rule Basic-DMZ1 (number 1) means that, when matching the condition (requests of LAN/DMZ-to-WAN direction with its source IP falling in the range of 10.1.1.254 / 255.255.255.0), the request will be translated into a public-source-IP requests, and then be forwarded to the destinations.</p>																												

<p>Step 6. Setup IP for the FTP Server</p>	<p>Assign an IP of 10.1.1.5/255.255.255.0 to the FTP server under DMZ1. Assume the FTP Server is at 10.1.1.5. And it is listening to the well-known port (21).</p>																
<p>Step 7. Setup Server Rules</p> <p>Insert a virtual server rule by clicking the Insert button.</p>	<p>ADVANCED SETTINGS > NAT > Virtual Servers</p>  <p>Virtual Server->Edit Rules</p> <p>Packets are top-down matched by the rules.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Item #</th> <th>Status Active</th> <th>Name</th> <th>Direction</th> <th>Condition Dest. IP Address</th> <th>Service</th> <th>Action Redirect to</th> <th>through</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td colspan="8" style="text-align: right;">Page 1/1</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Prev. Page Next Page Move Page 1</p> <p>Insert Edit Delete Move Before:</p>	Item #	Status Active	Name	Direction	Condition Dest. IP Address	Service	Action Redirect to	through	Page 1/1							
Item #	Status Active	Name	Direction	Condition Dest. IP Address	Service	Action Redirect to	through										
Page 1/1																	
<p>Step 8. Customize the Rule</p> <p>Customize the rule name as the ftpServer. For any packets with its destination IP address equaling to the WAN1 IP (61.2.1.1) and destination port equaling to 44444. DFL-1500 will translate the packet's destination IP/port into 10.1.1.5/21. Check the Passive FTP client to maximize the compatibility of the FTP protocol. This is useful if you want to provide connectivity to passive FTP clients. For passive FTP clients, the server at DMZ will return them the private IP address (10.1.1.5) and the port number for the clients to connect back for data transmissions. Since the FTP clients at the WAN side cannot connect to a private-IP (ex.10.1.1.5) through the internet. The data connections would be fail. After enabling this feature, the DFL-1500 will translate the private IP/port into an IP/port of its own. Thus the problem is gracefully solved.</p>	<p>ADVANCED SETTINGS > NAT > Virtual Servers > Insert</p>  <p>Virtual Server->Edit Rules->Insert</p> <p>Insert a new Virtual Server rule</p> <p>Status</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Activate this rule</p> <p>Rule name: ftpServer</p> <p>Condition</p> <p>Sessions from Internet connecting to WAN1</p> <p>External IP: 61.2.1.1</p> <p>Service: TCP</p> <p>Type <input checked="" type="radio"/> Single <input type="radio"/> Range</p> <p>Dest. Port: 44444 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Passive FTP client?</p> <p>to 0</p> <p>Action</p> <p>Redirect to internal server under DMZ1</p> <p>Internal IP: 10.1.1.5 Port: 21</p> <p>Back Apply</p>																
<p>Step 9. View the Result</p> <p>Now any request towards the DFL-1500's WAN1 IP (61.2.1.1) with dest. port 44444 will be translated into a request towards 10.1.1.5 with port 21, and then be forwarded to the 10.1.1.5. The FTP server listening at port 21 in 10.1.1.5 will pick up the request.</p>	<p>ADVANCED SETTINGS > NAT > Virtual Servers</p>  <p>Virtual Server->Edit Rules</p> <p>Packets are top-down matched by the rules.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Item #</th> <th>Status Active</th> <th>Name</th> <th>Direction</th> <th>Condition Dest. IP Address</th> <th>Service</th> <th>Action Redirect to</th> <th>through</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>Y</td> <td>ftpServer</td> <td>From WAN1</td> <td>61.2.1.1/255.255.255.255</td> <td>TCP:44444</td> <td>10.1.1.5:21</td> <td>DMZ1</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Prev. Page Next Page Move Page 1</p> <p>Insert Edit Delete Move Before: 1</p> <p>Page 1/1</p>	Item #	Status Active	Name	Direction	Condition Dest. IP Address	Service	Action Redirect to	through	1	Y	ftpServer	From WAN1	61.2.1.1/255.255.255.255	TCP:44444	10.1.1.5:21	DMZ1
Item #	Status Active	Name	Direction	Condition Dest. IP Address	Service	Action Redirect to	through										
1	Y	ftpServer	From WAN1	61.2.1.1/255.255.255.255	TCP:44444	10.1.1.5:21	DMZ1										

Step 10. View the NAT Rules

In the previous Step 8, we have already checked “Auto update to Firewall/NAT rules when you Apply this page”, so it will automatically add one NAT rule to transfer the IP address of virtual server when server responses packet back to the client.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > NAT > NAT Rules

NAT->Edit Rules

Packets are top-down matched by the rules.

Item #	Status		Condition		Action	
	Active	Name	Direction	Source IP Address	Translate Src IP into	Type
1	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	ftpServer	LAN/DMZ to WAN	10.1.1.5/255.255.255.255	61.2.1.1/255.255.255.255	1-1
2	<input type="radio"/>	Basic-DMZ1	LAN/DMZ to WAN	10.1.1.254/255.255.255.0	Auto (device WAN IP)	M-1
3	<input type="radio"/>	Basic-LAN2	LAN/DMZ to WAN	192.168.2.254/255.255.255.0	Auto (device WAN IP)	M-1
4	<input type="radio"/>	Basic-LAN1	LAN/DMZ to WAN	192.168.1.254/255.255.255.0	Auto (device WAN IP)	M-1

Page 1/1

Chapter 2 System Overview

In this chapter, we will introduce the network topology for use with later chapters.

2.1 Typical Example Topology

In this chapter, we introduce a typical network topology for the DFL-1500. In Figure 2-1, the left half side is a DFL-1500 with one LAN, one DMZ, and one WAN link. We will demonstrate the administration procedure in the later chapters by using the below Figure 2-1.

The right half side contains another DFL-1500 connected with one LAN, one DMZ, and one WAN. You can imagine this is a branch office of Organization_1. In this architecture, all the users under Organization_1 can access sever reside in the Internet or DMZ region smoothly. Besides, Organization_1 communicates with Organization_2 with a VPN tunnel established by the two DFL-1500 VPN/Firewall routers. The VPN tunnel secures communications between Organizations more safely.

We will focus on how to build up the topology using the DFL-1500 as the following Figure 2-1. In order to achieve this purpose, we need to know all the administration procedure.

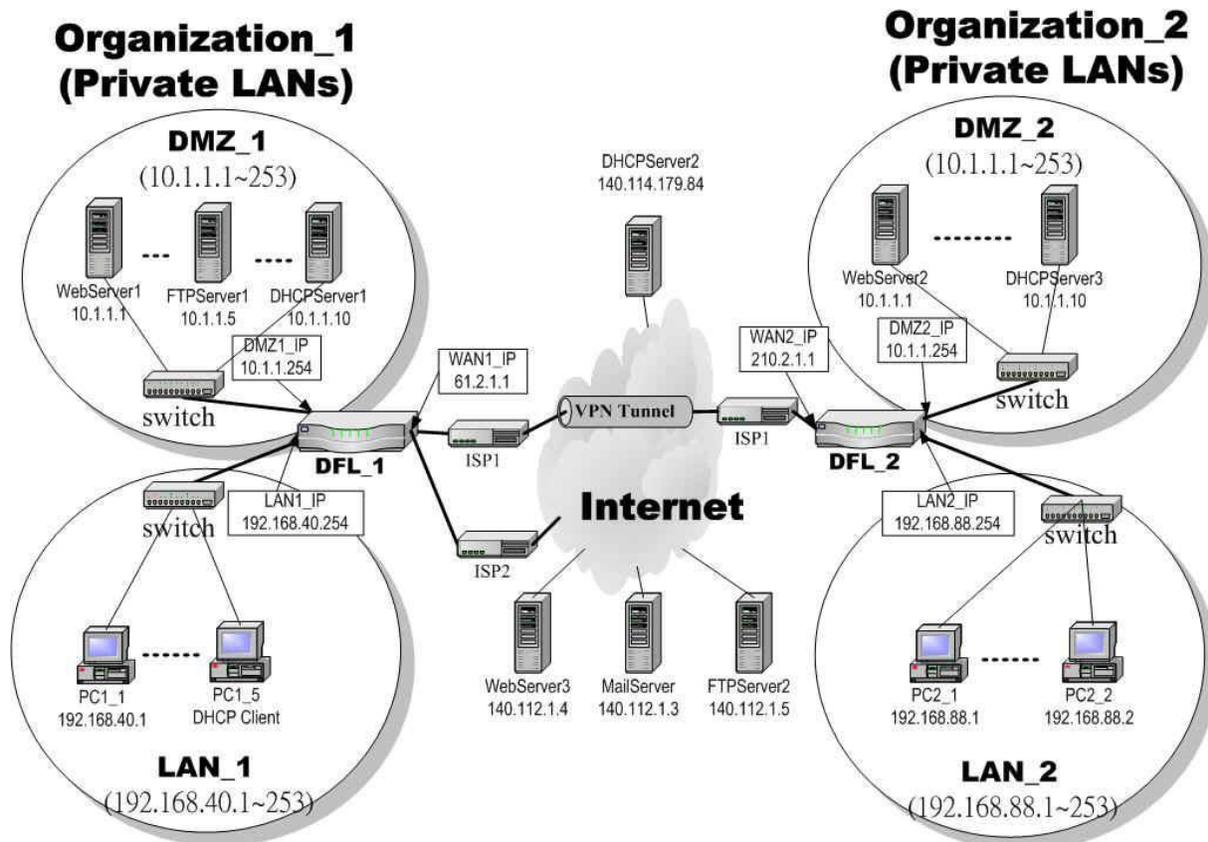


Figure 2-1 Typical topology for deploying DFL-1500

Continually, we will introduce all the needed administration procedure in the following section.

1. **Part II Basic Configuration**
How to configure the WAN/DMZ/LAN port settings and user authentication.
2. **Part III NAT、Routing & Firewall**
Introducing the NAT, Routing, Firewall features.
3. **Part IV Virtual Private Network**
If you need to build a secure channel with your branch office, or wish to access the inside company resource as usual while outside your company, the Virtual Private Network (VPN) function can satisfy you.
4. **Part V Content Filters**
If you hope to restrict the web contents, mail attachments, downloaded ftp file from intranet region, try this feature to fit your requirement.
5. **Part VI Intrusion Detection System**
Use the Intrusion Detection System (IDS) to detect all the potential DoS attacks, worms, hackers from Internet.
6. **Part VII Bandwidth Management、High Availability**
If you wish to make your inbound/outbound bandwidth utilized more efficiently, you may use the Bandwidth Management feature to manage your bandwidth.
7. **Part VIII System Maintenance**
In this part, we provide some useful skills to help you to justify DFL-1500 more securely and steadily.

2.2 Changing the LAN1 IP Address

The default settings of DFL-1500 are listing in Table 1-1. However, the original LAN1 setting is 192.168.1.254/255.255.255.0 instead of 192.168.40.254/255.255.255.0 as in Figure 2-1. We will change the LAN1 IP of the DFL-1500 to 192.168.40.254.

We provide two normal ways to configure the LAN1 IP address. One is to configure the LAN1 IP from LAN1 port. The other way is to configure the LAN1 IP through console.

2.2.1 From LAN1 to configure DFL-1500 LAN1 network settings

Step 1. Connect to the DFL-1500

Using a network line to connect DFL-1500 with LAN1 port. The PC which connected to DFL-1500 must be assigned 192.168.1.X address (LAN1 default IP address is 192.168.1.254/24). Type <https://192.168.1.254> or <http://192.168.1.254:8080> to configure the DFL-1500 in the web browser.

Use an IE at 192.168.1.1 to connect to <https://192.168.1.254>

Step 2. Setup LAN1 IP information

Enter the IP Address and IP Subnet Mask with 192.168.40.254 / 255.255.255.0 and click Apply.

Warning: After you apply the changed settings, the network will be disconnected instantly since the network IP address you are logging is changed.

BASIC SETUP > LAN Settings > LAN1 Status

LAN1 Status | LAN2 Status | IP Alias

LAN1 TCP/IP

IP Address: 192.168.40.254 | IP Subnet Mask: 255.255.255.0

DHCP Setup

Enable DHCP Server

IP Pool Starting Address: 192.168.40.1

Pool Size(max size: 253): 20

Primary DNS Server: 192.168.40.254

Secondary DNS Server: 0.0.0.0

Lease time(sec): 7200

Routing Protocol: None

OSPF Area ID:

Apply

2.2.2 From CLI (command line interface) to configure DFL-1500 LAN1 network settings

Step 1. Use Console port to configure DFL-1500

Use the supplied console line to connect the PC to the Diagnostic RS-232 socket of the DFL-1500. Start a new connection using the HyperTerminal with parameters: No Parity, 8 Data bits, 1 stop bit, and baud rate 9600. Enter admin for user name and admin for password to login. After logging into DFL-1500, enter the commands "en" to enter the privileged mode. Enter the command "ip ifconfig INTF3 192.168.40.254 255.255.255.0" to change the IP of the LAN1 interface.

```
DFL-1500> en
DFL-1500# ip ifconfig INTF3 192.168.40.254 255.255.255.0

DFL-1500# ip ifconfig INTF3
LAN1: flags=8843<UP,BROADCAST,RUNNING,SIMPLEX,MULTICAST> mtu 1500
address: 00:90:0b:02:99:69
media: Ethernet autoselect (none)
status: no carrier
inet 192.168.40.254 netmask 0xffffffff broadcast 192.168.40.255
DFL-1500#
```

2.3 The design principle

2.3.1 Web GUI design principle

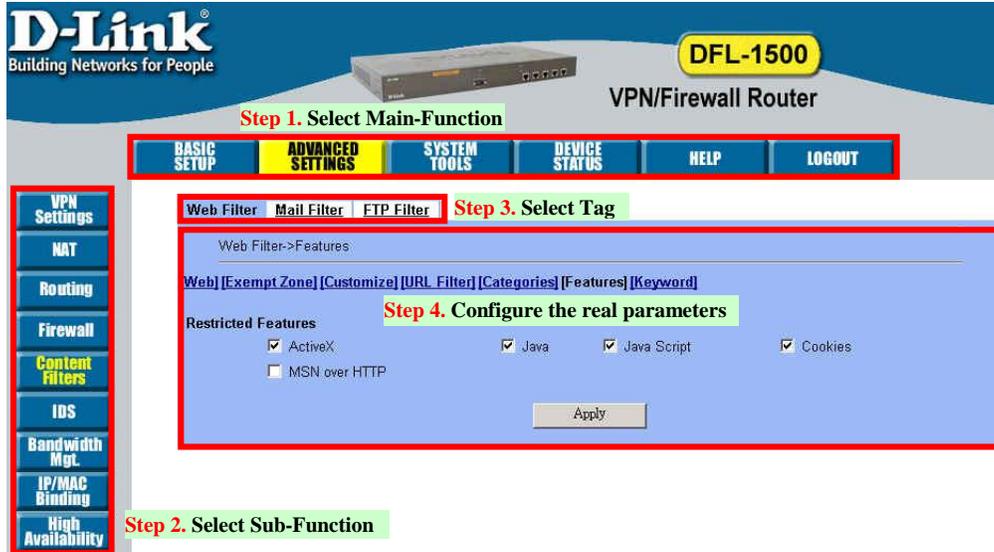


Figure 2-2 You can select the functional area by the sequence in Web GUI

If we want to configure DFL-1500, we can follow the sequence as the Figure 2-2 illustrated.

Step1. Select Main-function

Step2. Select Sub-function

Step3. Select Tag

Step4. Configure the real parameters

2.3.2 Rule principle

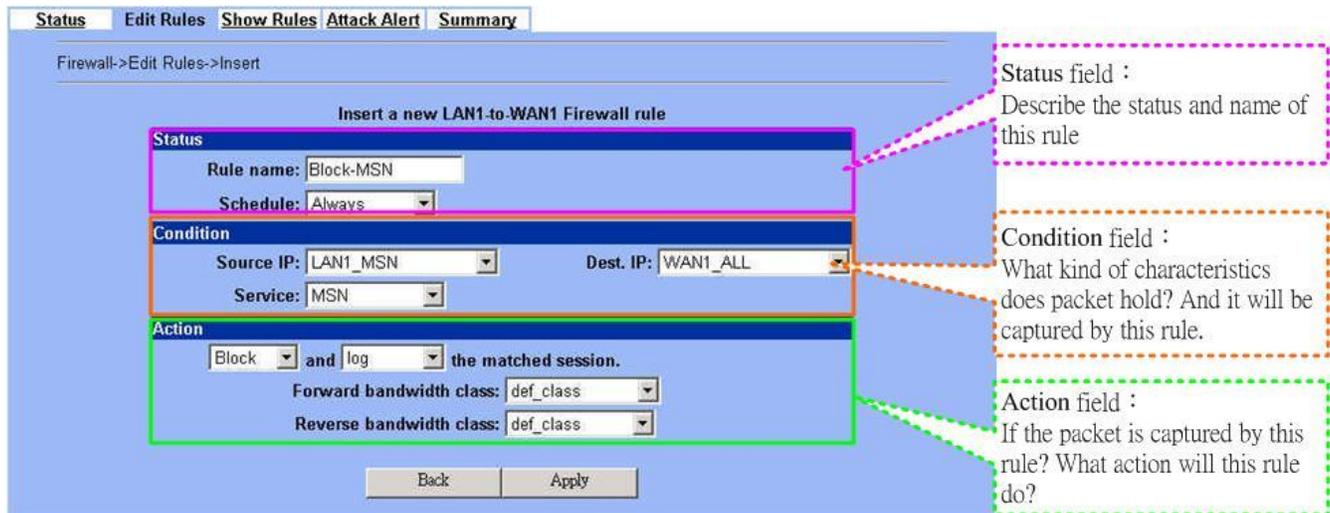


Figure 2-3 The rule configuration is divided into three parts

Part I Overview

You may find many rules configuration in the DFL-1500. They are distributed in the respective feature. These rules include

1. NAT rule
2. Virtual Server rule
3. Firewall rule
4. Policy route rule
5. Bandwidth management rule

The behavior of each rule is different, and so are their configuration parameters. But the designed principle of each rule is the same. The configuration is divided into three parts as Figure 2-3 illustrated. You just need to enter the necessary information onto each part according to your requirement. As for the definitions of the three-part configuration, please refer to the following description.

1. **Status:** Describe the status and name of this rule.
2. **Condition:** What kind of characteristics does packet hold? And it will be captured by this rule.
3. **Action:** If the packet is captured by this rule? What action will this rule do?

As the Figure 2-4 illustrated, the page of the rule edition is also divided into three parts. Their definitions are also the same as we have discussed in Figure 2-3.

Additionally, please note that there is a button named “Move Before” in the Figure 2-4. If you are not satisfied with the current rule sequence, you can adjust the rule sequence by using the “Move Before” button.

The screenshot shows the rule configuration page with three callout boxes:

- Status field:** Describe the status and name of this rule
- Condition field:** What kind of characteristics does packet hold? And it will be captured by this rule.
- Action field:** If the packet is captured by this rule? What action will this rule do?

The interface includes a table of rules and a 'Move Before' button. The table is as follows:

Item #	Status		Condition			Action	
	Name	Schedule	Source IP	Dest. IP	Service	Action	Log
1	Block-MSN	ALWAYS	LAN1_MSN	WAN1_ALL	MSN	Block	Y

At the bottom, there is a 'Move Before' button with a dropdown menu set to '1'.

If you are not satisfied with the current rule sequence, you can adjust the rule sequence by using the Move Before button.

Figure 2-4 The rules in the page of the rule edition are also divided into three parts.

Part II

Basic Configuration

Chapter 3 Basic Setup

In this chapter, we will introduce how to setup network settings for each port separately

3.1 Demand

1. For the external network, suppose your company uses DSL to connect Internet via fixed-IP. By this way, you should setup WAN port of the DFL-1500 in advance.
2. There are some adjustment within your company, so the original network structure has been changed. Now, you should modify the configuration between the internal network (DMZ, LAN).
3. Your company needs more network bandwidth if it is insufficient for your company to connect to the external network. Suppose there are many public IPs in your company. You would like to specify a unique public IP to a local server.

3.2 Objectives

1. Configure the network settings of the DFL-1500 WAN1 port.
2. Configure the network settings of the DFL-1500 DMZ1 and LAN1 ports.
3. We hope to assign another IP address to the same WAN port we have configured an existed IP address before.

3.3 Methods

1. Select the Fixed IP Address method in the DFL-1500 Basic Setup/WAN settings/WAN1 IP, and then configure the related account and password in order to connect to the internet.
2. Configure the related network settings in the pages of the DFL-1500 Basic Setup / DMZ settings / DMZ1 Status · Basic Setup / LAN settings / LAN1 Status.
3. Configure the IP alias in WAN1 port.

3.4 Steps

3.4.1 Setup WAN1 IP

Step 1. Setup WAN1 port

Here we select Fixed IP Address method in WAN1 port. Fill in the IP Address, Subnet Mask, Gateway IP. And then enter the other DNS IP Address, Routing Protocol fields. Click Apply to finish this setting.

BASIC SETUP > WAN Settings > WAN1 IP > Fixed IP Address

The screenshot shows the configuration page for WAN1 IP Fixed IP Address. The page has a blue background and a white border. At the top, there are three tabs: 'WAN1 IP', 'WAN2 IP', and 'IP Alias', with 'WAN1 IP' selected. Below the tabs, there is a dropdown menu for 'IP Address Assignment' set to 'Fixed IP Address'. A checkbox labeled 'Default WAN link (Gateway/DNS)' is checked. Below this, there are three input fields: 'IP Address' with the value '61.2.1.1', 'Subnet Mask' with '255.255.255.248', and 'Gateway IP' with '61.2.1.6'. Below these fields, there is a radio button for 'DNS IP Address' which is selected. Underneath, there are two input fields for 'Primary DNS' (value '168.95.1.1') and 'Secondary DNS' (value '0.0.0.0'). Below these, there is a dropdown menu for 'Routing Protocol' set to 'None' and an input field for 'OSPF Area ID'. At the bottom right, there is an 'Apply' button.

Part II

Basic Configuration

IP Address Assignment	FIELD	DESCRIPTION	Range / Format	EXAMPLE
Get IP Automatically (DHCP)	Default WAN link (Gateway/DNS)	When Default WAN link is enabled. All the packets sent out from DFL-1500 will be via this port.	Enable/Disable	Enabled
	Get DNS Automatically / DNS IP Address	Get DNS Automatically \Rightarrow Get DNS related information from DHCP Server DNS IP Address \Rightarrow manually specify these Primary and Secondary DNS Server information	Get DNS Automatically / DNS IP Address	Get DNS Automatically
	Routing Protocol	Determine to enable the dynamic routing protocol, to receive RIP message, to send out the RIP message if the RIP message is received or not.	None, RIPv1/In, RIPv1/In+Out, RIPv2/In, RIPv2/In+Out, OSPF	None
	OSPF Area ID	Specify OSPF area ID number	IPv4 format or digit string (Max 9 bits)	
Fixed IP Address	Default WAN link (Gateway/DNS)	When Default WAN link is enabled. All the packets sent out from DFL-1500 will be via this port.	Enable/Disable	Enabled
	IP Address	Specified IP address	IPv4 format	61.2.1.1
	Subnet Mask	Specified subnet mask	IPv4 format	255.255.255.248
	Gateway IP	Default gateway IP address	IPv4 format	61.2.1.6
	DNS IP Address: Primary DNS Secondary DNS	Specified Primary and Secondary DNS Server address	IPv4 format	Primary DNS: 168.95.1.1 Secondary DNS: 0.0.0.0
	Routing Protocol	Determine to enable the dynamic routing protocol, to receive RIP message, to send out the RIP message if the RIP message is received or not.	None, RIPv1/In, RIPv1/In+Out, RIPv2/In, RIPv2/In+Out, OSPF	None
PPP over Ethernet	OSPF Area ID	Specify OSPF area ID number	IPv4 format or digit string (Max 9 bits)	
	Default WAN link (Gateway/DNS)	When Default WAN link is enabled, all the packets sent out from DFL-1500 will be via this port.	Enable/Disable	Enabled
	Service Name	ISP vendor (Optional)	text string	So-Net
	User Name	The user name of PPPoE account	text string	Hey
	Password	The password of PPPoE account	text string	G54688

	Get DNS Automatically / DNS IP Address	Get DNS Automatically → Get DNS related information from PPPoE ISP DNS IP Address → manually specify these Primary and Secondary DNS Server information	Get DNS Automatically / DNS IP Address	Get DNS Automatically
	Disconnect button	Through click Disconnect button to disconnect PPPoE link	Disconnect	Click Disconnect

Table 3-1 Detailed information of setup WAN port configuration

3.4.2 Setup DMZ1, LAN1 Status

Step 1. Setup DMZ port

Here we are going to configure the DMZ1 settings. Setup IP Address and IP Subnet Mask, and determine if you would like to enable the DHCP Server. And then select Routing Protocol. Click Apply to finish this setting.

BASIC SETUP > DMZ Settings > DMZ1 Status

The screenshot shows the configuration interface for DMZ1 Status. It includes the following fields and values:

- DMZ1 TCP/IP:** IP Address: 10.1.1.254, IP Subnet Mask: 255.255.255.0
- DHCP Setup:**
 - Enable DHCP Server
 - IP Pool Starting Address: 10.1.1.1
 - Pool Size(max size: 253): 20
 - Primary DNS Server: 10.1.1.254
 - Secondary DNS Server: 0.0.0.0
 - Lease time(sec): 7200
- Routing Protocol:** None
- OSPF Area ID:** (empty)
- Apply** button

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	Range / Format	EXAMPLE
IP Address	DMZ port IP address	IPv4 format	10.1.1.254
IP Subnet Mask	DMZ port IP subnet mask	netmask format	255.255.255.0
Enable DHCP Server	Enable DMZ port of the DHCP Server or not	Enable/Disable	Enabled
IP Pool Starting Address	Specify the starting address of the DHCP IP address.	IPv4 format in the DMZ address range	10.1.1.1
Pool Size(max size: 253)	Specify the numbers of the DHCP IP address.	1 ~253	20
Primary DNS Server	Specify the Primary DNS Server IP address of the DHCP information.	IPv4 format	10.1.1.254
Secondary DNS Server	Specify the Secondary DNS Server IP address of the DHCP information.	IPv4 format	0.0.0.0
Lease time(sec)	Specify DHCP information lease time	greater than 0	7200
Routing Protocol	Determine to enable the dynamic routing protocol (RIP), to receive RIP message, to send out RIP message if the message is received or not.	None / RIPv1In / RIPv1In+out / RIPv2In / RIPv2In+out / OSPF	None

Part II Basic Configuration

OSPF Area ID	Specify OSPF area ID number	IPv4 format or digit string (Max 9 bits)	N/A
--------------	-----------------------------	--	-----

Table 3-2 Configure DMZ network settings

<p>Step 2. Setup LAN port</p> <p>Here we are going to configure the LAN1 settings. Setup IP Address and IP Subnet Mask, and determine if you would like to enable the DHCP Server. And then select Routing Protocol. Click Apply to finish this setting.</p>	<p>BASIC SETUP > LAN Settings > LAN1 Status</p>
---	--

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	Range / Format	EXAMPLE
IP Address	LAN1 port IP address	IPv4 format	192.168.40.254
IP Subnet Mask	LAN1 port IP subnet mask	netmask format	255.255.255.0
Enable DHCP Server	Enable LAN1 port of the DHCP Server or not	Enable/Disable	Enabled
IP Pool Starting Address	Specify the starting address of the DHCP IP address.	IPv4 format in the LAN1 address range	192.168.40.100
Pool Size(max size: 253)	Specify the numbers of the DHCP IP address.	1 ~253	20
Primary DNS Server	Specify the Primary DNS Server IP address of the DHCP information.	IPv4 format	192.168.40.254
Secondary DNS Server	Specify the Secondary DNS Server IP address of the DHCP information.	IPv4 format	0.0.0.0
Lease time(sec)	Specify DHCP information lease time	greater than 0	7200
Routing Protocol	Determine to enable the dynamic routing protocol (RIP), to receive RIP message, to send out RIP message if the message is received or not.	None / RIPv1In / RIPv1In+out / RIPv2In / RIPv2In+out / OSPF	None
OSPF Area ID	Specify OSPF area ID number	IPv4 format or digit string (Max 9 bits)	N/A

Table 3-3 Configure LAN network settings

3.4.3 Setup WAN1 IP alias

Step 3. Add WAN1 IP alias

Suppose you apply 8 IP addresses from ISP. The range of the ISP-given IP address is from 61.2.1.0 to 61.2.1.7. Now you would like to add three WAN1 IP aliases. Select WAN1 in the Interface field. Enter the IP alias and Netmask with 61.2.1.2/255.255.255.248. Key in 3 into the Alias size field. And then click Apply.

Notice : It's the same way to set IP alias in DMZ or LAN.

BASIC SETUP > WAN Settings > IP Alias > Add

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	Range / Format	EXAMPLE
Interface	The interface which we set for the IP alias	WAN interfaces	WAN1
IP alias	The alias IP address	IPv4 format	61.2.1.2
Netmask	The netmask of the IP alias	netmask format	255.255.255.248
Alias size	The size of IP alias address	Max 60	3

Table 3-4 Add a IP alias record

Step 4. Edit, Delete IP alias record

You can easily add, edit, or delete IP alias records by the Add, Edit, or Delete button.

BASIC SETUP > WAN Settings > IP Alias

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	EXAMPLE
Prev. Page	If there are more than one IP alias pages, you can press Prev. Page to back to the previous page.	N/A
Add	Insert a new IP alias record.	N/A
Edit	Edit the properties of the existent record.	N/A
Delete	Delete the indicated record.	N/A

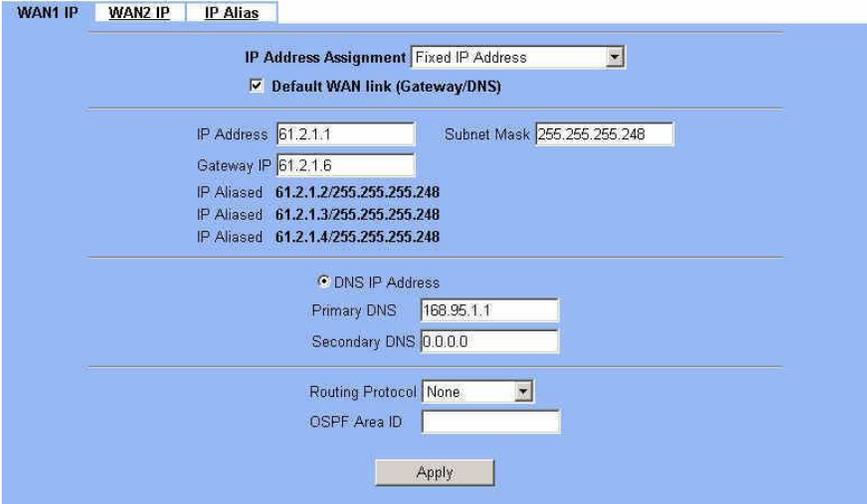
Part II Basic Configuration

Next Page	If there are more than one action records, you can press Next Page to go to the next page.	N/A
-----------	--	-----

Table 3-5 Show the entered IP alias records

Maximize IP alias records of DFL-1500	WAN port	60 records
	DMZ port	10 records
	LAN port	10 records

Table 3-6 IP alias limitation of each port

<p>Step 5. See the IP alias setting in the “WAN1 IP” page</p> <p>After entering the IP alias address, it will show the result in the “WAN1 IP” page.</p> <p>Warning: If you select Fixed IP Address as your WAN link type and set any IP alias, the previous set IP aliases will disappear when you try to exchange the WAN link type to other type such as DHCP or PPPoE.</p>	<p>BASIC SETUP > WAN Settings > WAN1 IP > Fixed IP Address</p> 
---	--

Chapter 4

System Tools

This chapter introduces System Management and explains how to implement it.

4.1 Demand

1. Basic configurations for domain name, password, system time, timeout and services.
2. DDNS: Suppose the DFL-1500's WAN uses dynamic IP but needs a fixed host name. When the IP is changed, it is necessary to have the DNS record updated accordingly. To use this service, one has to register the account, password, and the wanted host name with the service provider.
3. DNS Proxy: Shorten the time of DNS lookup performed by applications.
4. DHCP Relay: It is to solve the problem that when the DHCP client is not in the same domain with the DHCP server, the DHCP broadcast will not be received by the server. If the client is in the LAN (192.168.40.X) while the server is located in the DMZ (10.1.1.4), the server will not receive any broadcast packet from the client.
5. The System Administrator would like to monitor the device from remote side efficiently.
6. Suppose our company applies three ISPs, but there are just two default WAN ports in the DFL-1500. You hope to connect the whole ISP links to the DFL-1500.

4.2 Objectives

1. Configure the general properties, such as domain name, password, system time, and connection timeout correctly. Besides, we can configure the preferred service name as the service name/numeric mapping list.
2. DDNS: By using the DDNS (Dynamic DNS), the DFL-1500 will send the request for modification of the corresponding DNS record to the DDNS server after the IP is changed.
3. DNS Proxy: Reduce the number of DNS requests and the time for DNS lookup.
4. DHCP Relay: Enable the DHCP client to contact with the DHCP server located in different domain and get the required IP.
5. Through the SNMP manager, we can easily monitor the device status.
6. We hope to customize the interface of DFL-1500 to fit our requests.

4.3 Methods

1. Configure the domain name, password, system time, connection timeout and service name.
2. DDNS: Configure the DFL-1500 so that whenever the IP of the DFL-1500 is changed, it will send requests to the DDNS server to refresh the DNS record. As the following Figure 4-1 demonstrated, the original DFL-1 has registered WAN1 IP address "61.2.1.1" on the DDNS server (www.dyndns.org). Its domain name address is "me.dyndns.org". If the WAN1 IP address is reassigned by the ISP, DFL-1 will update the registered IP address "61.2.1.1" as the assigned one. This is the base mechanism of the DDNS.

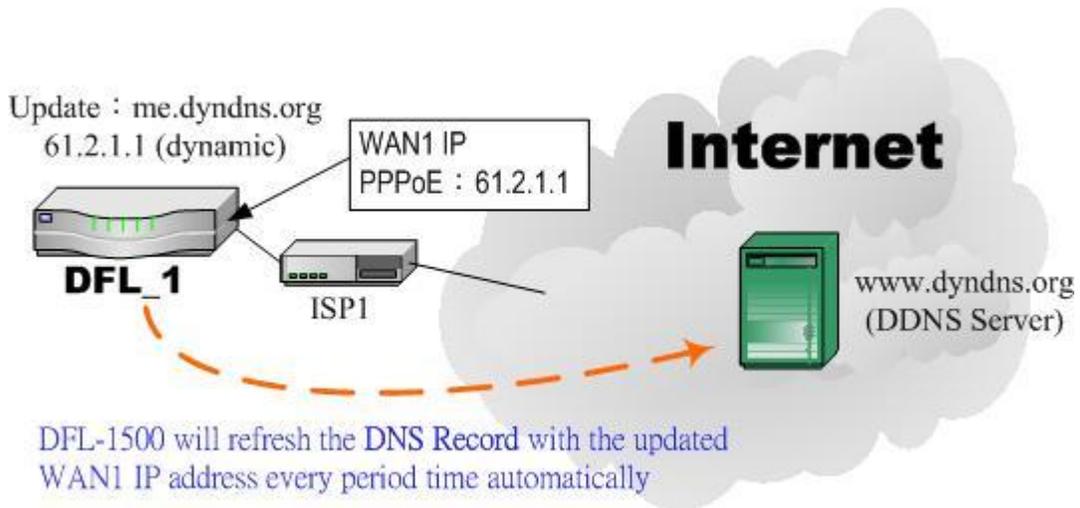


Figure 4-1 DDNS mechanism chart

3. DNS Proxy: After activating the DNS proxy mode, the client can set its DNS server to the DFL-1500 (that is, send the DNS requests to the DFL-1500). The DFL-1500 will then make the enquiry to the DNS server and return the result to the client. Besides, the caching mechanism performed by the DNS proxy can also help reduce possible duplicate DNS lookups. As the following Figure 4-2 described. DFL-1 redirects the DNS request from PC1_1 to the real DNS server (140.113.1.1).

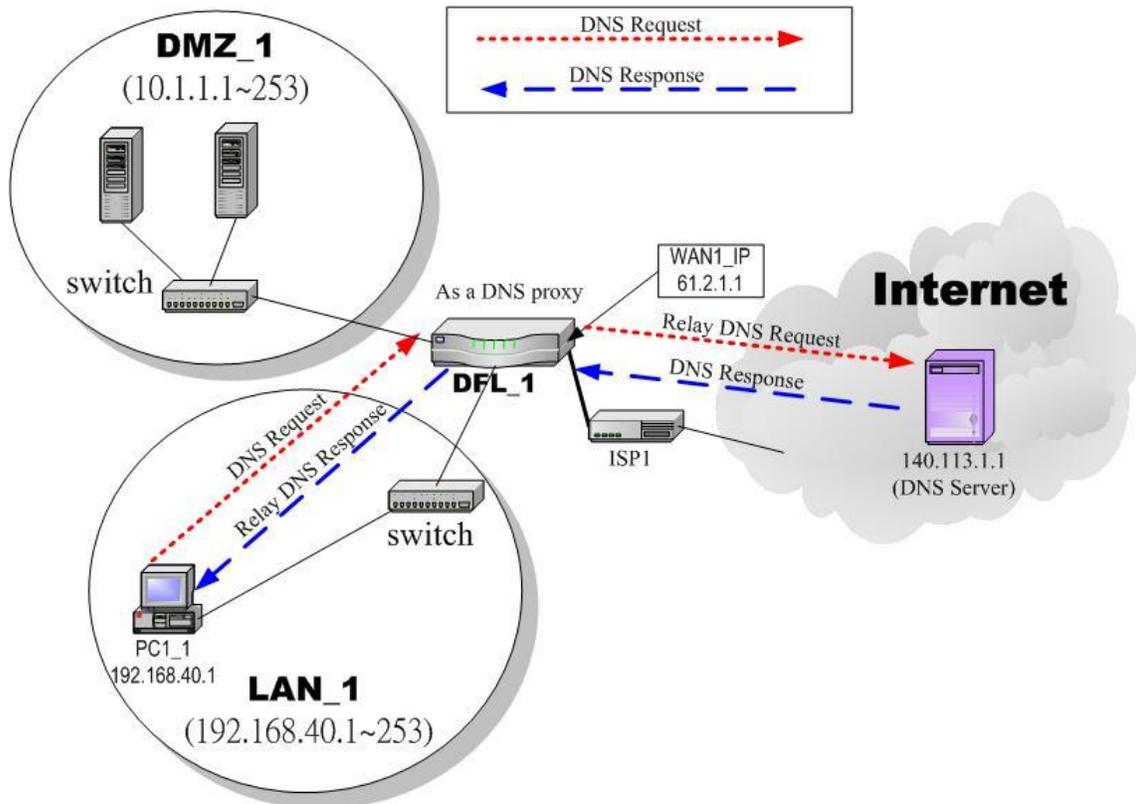


Figure 4-2 DNS Proxy mechanism chart

4. DHCP Relay: Activate the DHCP relay mode of DFL-1500 so that the DFL-1500 will become the relay agent and relay the DHCP broadcast to the configured DHCP server. As the following Figure 4-3 described, DFL-1 redirects the DHCP

request from the preconfigured port (LAN1) to the real DHCP server (10.1.1.4). Besides, in this diagram, we can find that the PC of DMZ region communicated with the DHCP server directly.

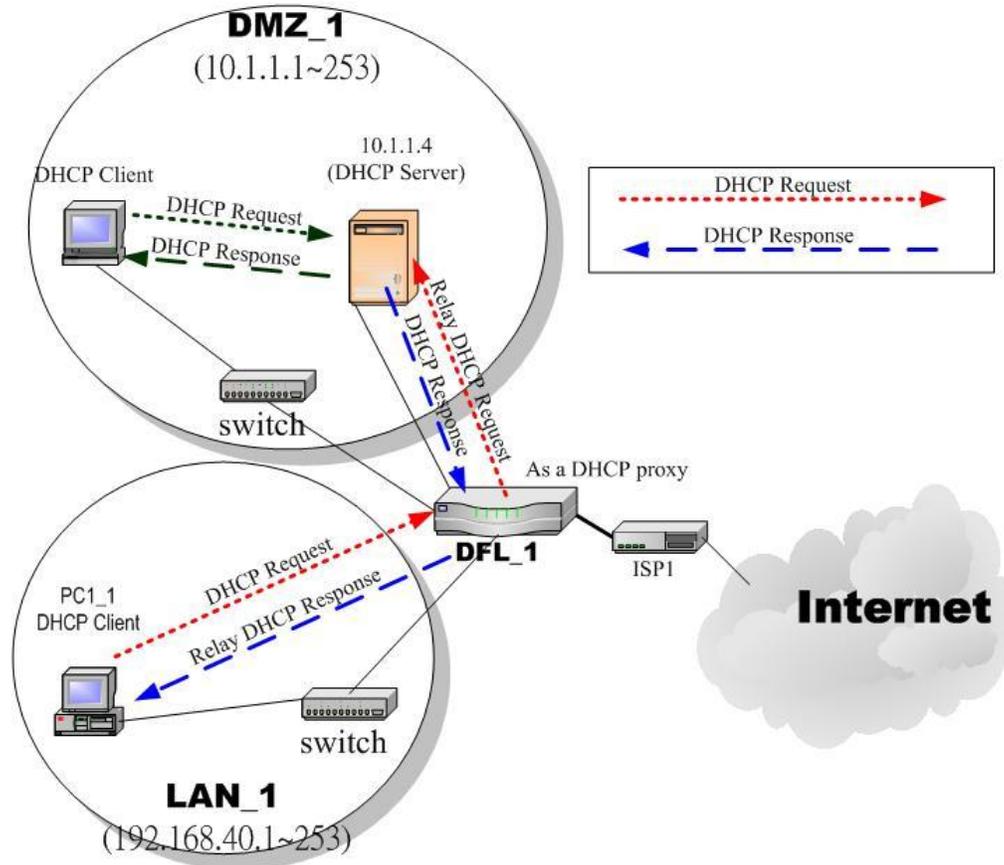


Figure 4-3 DHCP Relay mechanism chart

- As the following Figure 4-4 demonstrated, there is an embedded snmp agent in the DFL-1500. So you can use SNMP manager to monitor the DFL-1500 system status, network status ,etc. from either LAN or internet.

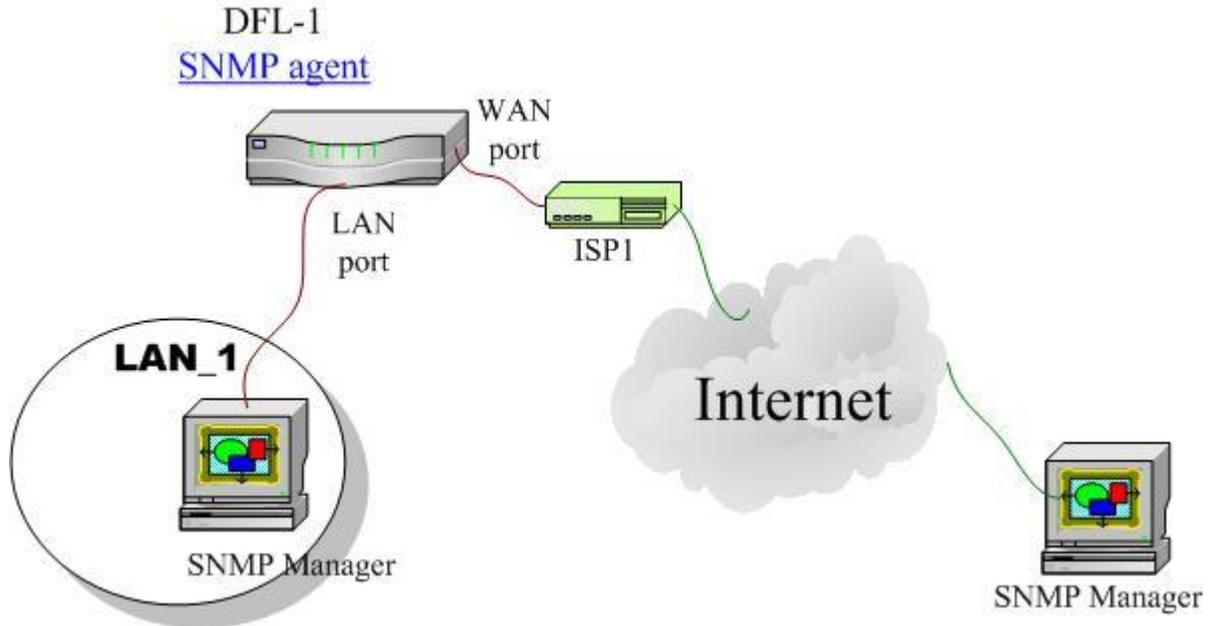


Figure 4-4 It is efficient to use SNMP Manager to monitor DFL-1500 device

6. We can adjust the DFL-1500 interface in the SYSTEM TOOLS > Admin Settings > Interface in according to our preference and requirement (3 WAN, 1 DMZ, 1 LAN). As the following Figure 4-5 demonstrated, there are three ISP connected onto DFL-1500. So we must adjust the interface up to 3 WAN ports to fit the current condition.

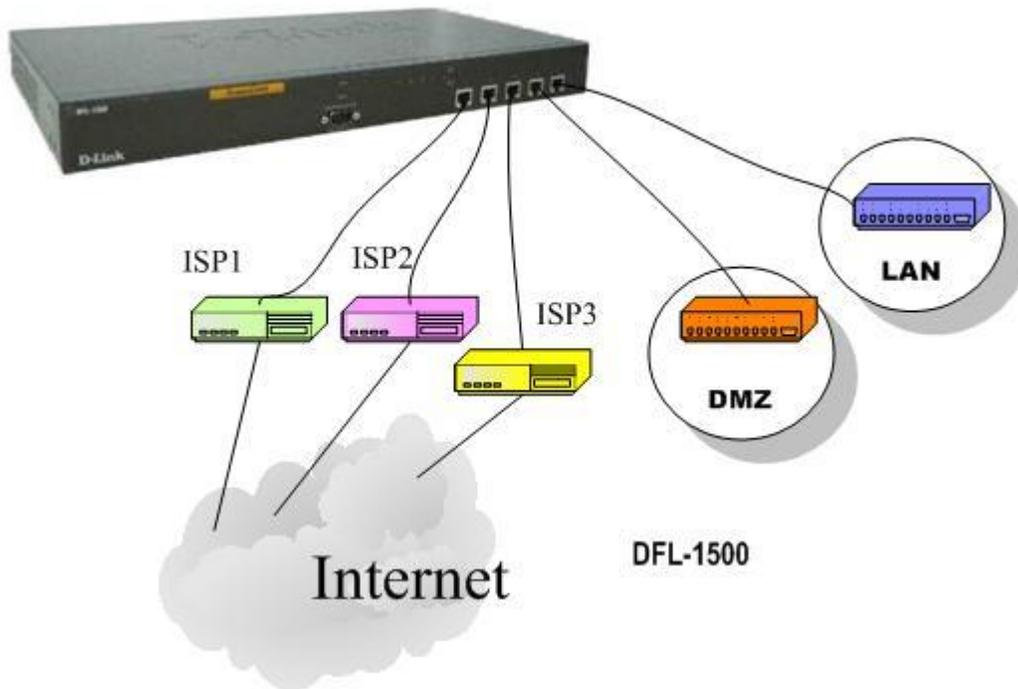


Figure 4-5 Adjust DFL-1500 interface to fit present situation

4.4 Steps

4.4.1 General settings

<p>Step 1. General Setup Enter the Host Name as DFL-1, Domain Name as the domain name of your company Click Apply.</p>	<p>SYSTEM TOOLS > Admin Settings > General</p> 
---	--

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	EXAMPLE
Host Name	The host name of the DFL-1500 device	DFL-1
Domain Name	Fill in the domain name of company	dlink.com

Table 4-1 System Tools - General Setup menu

<p>Step 2. Change Password Enter the current password in the Old Password field. Enter the new password in the New Password and retype it in the Confirm Password field. Click Apply.</p>	<p>SYSTEM TOOLS > Admin Settings > Password</p> 
--	--

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	EXAMPLE
Old Password	The original password of administrator	admin
New Password	The new selected password	12345
Confirm Password	Double confirm the new selected password	12345

Table 4-2 Enter new password

Part II

Basic Configuration

Step 3. Setup Time/Date

Select the Time Zone where you are located. Enter the nearest NTP time server in the NTP time server address. Note that your DNS must be set if the entered address requires domain name lookup. You can also enter an IP address instead. Check the Continuously (every 3 min) update system clock and click Apply. The DFL-1500 will immediately update the system time and will periodically update it. Check the Update system clock using the time server at boot time and click Apply if you want to update the clock at each boot. If you want to manually change the system time, uncheck the Continuously (every 3 min) update system clock and proceed by entering the target date.

SYSTEM TOOLS > Admin Settings > Time/Date

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	EXAMPLE
Time zone	the time zone of your area	N/A
NTP time server address	Use NTP time server to auto update date/time value	tock.usno.navy.mil
Continuously (every 3 min) update system clock	System will update system date/time value every 3 minutes to NTP time sever.	Enabled
Update system clock using the time server at boot time	System will update system date/time value to the NTP time server at boot time.	disabled
Manual Time Setup	Manual setting Time & Date value.	N/A

Table 4-3 System Tools – Time Data menu

Step 4. Setup Timeout

Select the target timeout (e.g. 10 min) from the System Auto Timeout Lifetime. Click the Apply button. Now the browser will not timeout for the following 10 minutes after your last touching of it.

SYSTEM TOOLS > Admin Settings > Timeout

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	EXAMPLE
System Auto Timeout Lifetime	When system is idle for a specified time, system will force the people who logins into the system will logout automatically.	10

Table 4-4 System Tools – Timeout menu

4.4.2 DDNS setting

Step 1. Setup DDNS

If the IP address of DFL-1500 WAN port is dynamic allocated, you may want to have the Dynamic DNS mechanism to make your partner always use the same domain name (like xxx.com) to connect to you. Select a WAN interface to update the DDNS record. Here we supply three DDNS Service Providers. Fill in the Host Name, Username, Password supplied by the DDNS web site. Please refer to the DDNS web site for the detailed information. Click Apply to activate the settings.

Before setting the DDNS information in this page. Make sure that you have registered an account in the indicated Service Provider. Then you can enter the related information in the DDNS page.

Note: If you choose “WWW.ORAY.NET” as your DDNS service provider, a default port number 5050 will show in the Port field. It means that if you use this port to connect to WWW.ORAY.NET, it will be free charge.

SYSTEM TOOLS > Admin Settings > DDNS

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	EXAMPLE
Enable DDNS for WAN1	Enable DDNS feature of DFL-1500	Enabled
Interface	Assign which public IP address of interface to the DDNS server.	WAN1
Service Provider	The domain address of DDNS server. In the DFL-1500, we provide WWW.DYNDNS.ORG , WWW.DHS.ORG , WWW.ORAY.NET , WWW.CHANGEIP.COM , WWW.ADSLDNS.NET , WWW.NO-IP.COM , WWW.DNS2GO.COM , WWW.3322.ORG , WWW.88IP.NET , and WWW.HN.ORG ten websites for choice. If you choose WWW.ORAY.NET as DDNS service provider, it would register the source IP address which is connected to the DDNS server. It means that the WAN1 IP address must be public address.	WWW.ORAY.NET
Hostname	The registered Hostname in the DDNS server.	abc.vic.net
Username	The registered username in the DDNS server.	john
Password	The registered password in the DDNS server.	123456
Port	The default port number to connect to WWW.ORAY.NET for free charge	5050

Table 4-6 System Tools – DDNS setting page

4.4.3 DNS Proxy setting

Step 1. Setup DNS Proxy

Check the **Enable DNS Proxy** and click the **Apply** to store the settings. From now on, your LAN/DMZ PCs can use DFL-1500 as their DNS server, as long as the DNS server for DFL-1500 has been set in its WAN settings.

SYSTEM TOOLS > Admin Settings > DNS Proxy

The screenshot shows the 'DNS Proxy' configuration page. At the top, there are tabs for 'General', 'DDNS', 'DNS Proxy', 'DHCP Relay', 'Password', 'Time/Date', 'Timeout', 'Services', and 'Interface'. The 'DNS Proxy' tab is selected. Below the tabs, there is a checkbox labeled 'Enable DNS Proxy' which is checked and highlighted with a red box. At the bottom of the page, there is an 'Apply' button.

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	EXAMPLE
Enable DNS Proxy	When the host which resides at the LAN/DMZ region sends a DNS Request to the DNS server (DFL-1500). DFL-1500 will request for forwarding it to the assigned DNS server. When there is a response from assigned DNS server, then DFL-1500 will forward it back to the host of the LAN/DMZ.	Enabled

Table 4-7 System Tools – DNS Proxy menu

4.4.4 DHCP Relay setting

Step 1. Setup DHCP Relay

Check the **Enable DHCP Relay**. Enter the IP address of your DHCP server. Here we enter the DHCP Server address 10.1.1.4. Check the relay domain of DFL-1500 that needs to be relayed. Namely, check the one where the DHCP clients are located. And click the **Apply** button finally.

Notice, the DHCP Server can not be located with the subnet range of Relay Domain.

SYSTEM TOOLS > Admin Settings > DHCP Relay

The screenshot shows the 'DHCP Relay' configuration page. At the top, there are tabs for 'General', 'DDNS', 'DNS Proxy', 'DHCP Relay', 'Password', 'Time/Date', 'Timeout', 'Services', and 'Interface'. The 'DHCP Relay' tab is selected. Below the tabs, there is a checkbox labeled 'Enable DHCP Relay' which is checked and highlighted with a red box. Below this, there is a text input field for 'DHCP Server' containing the value '10.1.1.4'. Underneath, there is a section for 'Relay Domain' with three radio button options: 'DMZ1 (Port3)', 'LAN1 (Port4)' (which is selected), and 'LAN2 (Port5)'. At the bottom of the page, there is an 'Apply' button.

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	EXAMPLE
Enable DHCP Relay	When the host of the LAN/DMZ in the DFL-1500 internal network sends a DHCP request, DFL-1500 will forward it automatically to the specified DHCP server (different subnet from the network segment of the DHCP client).	Enabled
DHCP Server	Current location of the DHCP server.	10.1.1.4
Relay Domain	The locations of the DHCP clients.	Enable LAN1

Table 4-8 System Tools – DHCP Relay menu

4.4.5 SNMP Control

Step 1. Setup SNMP Control

Through setting the related information in this page, we can use SNMP manager to monitor the system status, network status of DFL-1500.

SYSTEM TOOLS > SNMP Control

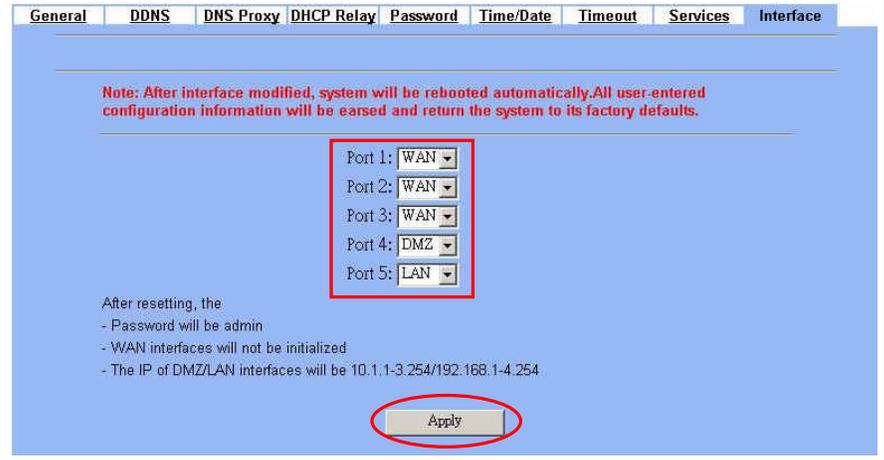
FIELD	DESCRIPTION	EXAMPLE
Enable SNMP	Enable the SNMP function or not.	Enabled
System Name	The device name of DFL-1500.	DFL-1.dlink.com
System Location	The settled location of DFL-1500.	Office
Contact Info	The person who takes charge of the DFL-1500.	mis
Get community	The community which can get the SNMP information. Here “community” is something like password.	public-ro
Set community	The community which can get the SNMP information. Here “community” is something like password.	private-rw
Trusted hosts	The IP address which can get or set community from the DFL-1500.	192.168.1.5
Trap community	The community which will send SNMP trap. Here “community” is something like password.	trap-comm
Trap destination	The IP address which will send SNMP trap from the DFL-1500.	192.168.1.5

4.4.6 Change DFL-1500 interface

Step 1. Change Interface definition

The default port settings are 2 WAN ports, 1 DMZ port and 2 LAN ports. But in order to fit our requirement. Here we select 3 WAN (port1~3), 1 DMZ (port4), 1 LAN (port5). And then press apply button to reboot DFL-1500. Note that the DMZ and LAN port IP addresses are going to be 10.1.1.254 and 192.168.1.254 after device finishes reboot. Besides, there should be at least one WAN port and one LAN port existing in the DFL-1500. You are not allowed to casually change the interface to the state which has no LAN port or WAN port.

SYSTEM TOOLS > Admin Settings > Interface



After resetting, the
 - Password will be admin
 - WAN interfaces will not be initialized
 - The IP of DMZ/LAN interfaces will be 10.1.1-3.254/192.168.1-4.254

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	EXAMPLE
Port1 ~ Port5	You can specify WAN / LAN / DMZ for each port by your preference. However, there must be one WAN and one LAN interface existing in the DFL-1500.	Port1 : WAN Port2 : WAN Port3 : WAN Port4 : DMZ Port5 : LAN

Table 4-9 Change the DFL-1500 interface setting

Chapter 5

Remote Management

This chapter introduces remote management and explains how to implement it.

5.1 Demands

Administrators may want to manage the DFL-1500 remotely from any PC in LAN_1 with HTTP at port 8080, and from WAN_PC with TELNET. In addition, the DFL-1500 may be more secure if monitored by a trusted host (PC1_1). What is more, the DFL-1500 should not respond to ping to hide itself. The remote management function in DFL-1500 devices is implemented by hidden Firewall rules.

5.2 Methods

1. Only allow management by WAN_PC (140.2.5.1) at the WAN1 side.
2. Administrators can use browsers to connect to <http://192.168.40.254:8080> for management.
3. Allow SNMP monitoring by PC1_1 (192.168.40.1) at the LAN1 side.
4. Do not respond to ICMP ECHO packets at the WAN1 side.

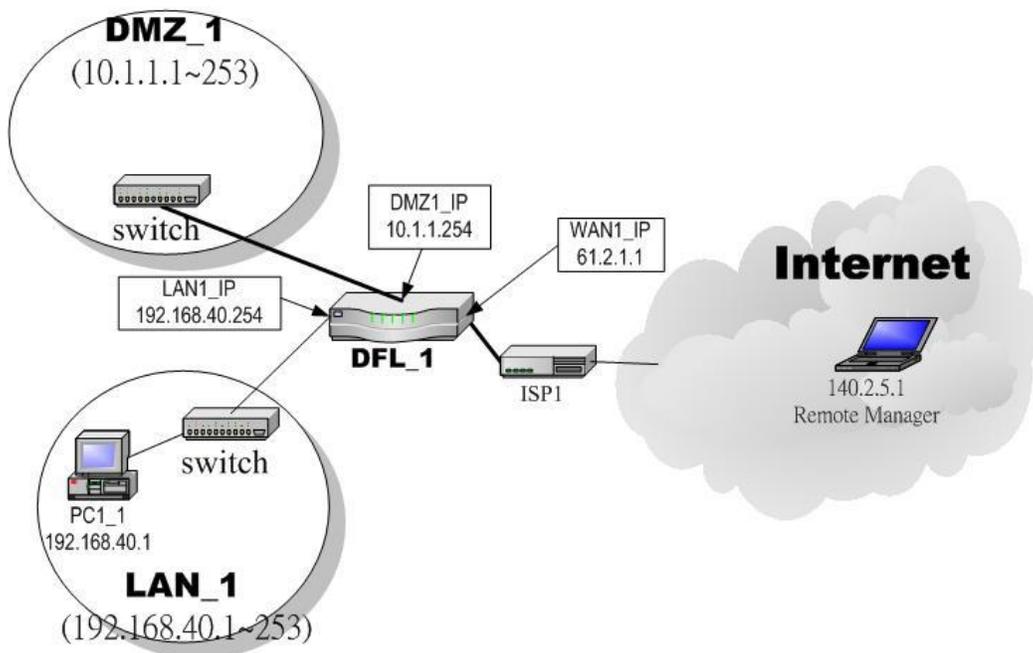


Figure 5-1 Some management methods of DFL-1500

5.3 Steps

5.3.1 Telnet

Step 2. Setup Telnet

Enter 23 instead of the default 2323 in the Server Port field. Check the WAN1 checkbox. Click the Selected of Secure Client IP Address, and then enter the specified IP address (140.2.5.1) for accessing DFL-1500. And click the Apply.

SYSTEM TOOLS > Remote Mgt. > TELNET

Server Port: 23
Allow Access from: WAN1 WAN2 DMZ1 LAN1 LAN2
Secure Client IP Address: All Selected 140.2.5.1
Apply

5.3.2 WWW

Step 1. Setup WWW

Check the LAN1 checkbox, and enter the new Server Port 8080 that will be accessed by the user's browser (<http://192.168.40.254:8080>). Here we click All for all no IP range limitation of clients. And click the Apply button.

Note that the Secure Client IP Address is the IP address which can be used to configure DFL-1500.

SYSTEM TOOLS > Remote Mgt. > WWW

Server Port: 8080
Allow Access from: WAN1 WAN2 DMZ1 LAN1 LAN2
Secure Client IP Address: All Selected 0.0.0.0
Apply

Step 2. Warning message

If you click the Selected of Secure Client IP Address and then enter the specified IP address, a warning message will appear to notice you that "Warning! If you are connecting to this Firewall with HTTP, this action may disconnect your session. Please remember the settings and reconnect to the firewall again." after applying the settings.

Warning! If you are connecting to this Firewall with HTTPS, this action may disconnect your session. Please remember the settings and reconnect to the Firewall again.
Are you sure to apply this action?
确定 取消

5.3.3 SNMP

Step 1. Setup SNMP

Check the LAN1 checkbox. In the Secure Client Address field. If you prefer indicated specified IP address. Just click the Selected, and enter the valid IP address for reading the SNMP MIBs at the DFL-1500. Finally click the Apply button.

SYSTEM TOOLS > Remote Mgt. > SNMP

Server Port: 161
Allow Access from: WAN1 WAN2 DMZ1 LAN1 LAN2
Secure Client IP Address: All Selected 0.0.0.0
Apply

5.3.4 ICMP

Step 1. Setup ICMP

Uncheck the WAN1 checkbox and make others checked. Then click the `Apply` button.

SYSTEM TOOLS > Remote Mgt. > MISC

Respond to Ping on

WAN1 WAN2 DMZ1 LAN1 LAN2

Apply

Chapter 6 Authentication

This chapter introduces user authentication and explains how to implement it.

6.1 Demands

DFL-1500 VPN/Firewall Router support user authentication to the DFL-1500 user database, to a RADIUS server or to a LDAP server. You can add username and password to allow the user to authenticate using the internal database or connect to the internet. You can also add the name of a Radius server and select Radius to allow the user to authenticate using the selected Radius server.

6.2 Methods

Remember that you can only use web browser to do the authentication in order for you to pass through the DFL-1500. If you cannot pass the authentication, you can access neither external internet nor internal resources. By default, servers under DMZ interface can access internet without the authentication. PCs under both LAN1 and LAN2 interface has to pass the authentication first and then they can access the internet or internal resources under other interfaces (LAN1/LAN2 or DMZ). If a PC under LAN1 or LAN2 interface will access internet or internal resources without the authentication, you can add this PC's IP address into the Exempt Host list.

There are four steps to configure the authentication:

1. Setting authentication timeout.
2. Configuring the Authentication Type.
3. Configuring the Authentication Setting.
4. Configuring the Exempt Host.

6.3 Steps

6.3.1 Local Setting

Step 1. Enable Authentication

Check the Enable Authentication checkbox. Set Auth timeout to control how long authenticated firewall connections are valid. The default authentication timeout is 30 minutes. Select the Authentication Type.

Basic Setup > Authentication > Authentication

Authentication Exempt Host

Enable Authentication

Timeout(min)

Authentication Type Local Pop3(s) Imap(s) Radius LDAP

LOCAL Setting

Username:

Password:

Add

Delete

Apply

Step 2. Configure Local Settings

Enter the `Username` and `Password`, and then click `Add` to add it to user's list. If you would like to delete a user, just click that username and then click `Delete` to remove it. Click `Apply` to finish the settings.

Basic Setup > Authentication > Authentication > Local

Authentication Exempt Host

Enable Authentication

Timeout(min):

Authentication Type: Local Pop3(s) Imap(s) Radius LDAP

LOCAL Setting:

Username:

Password:

Step 3. Show the Authentication

After applying Local setting, there will be an Authentication dialog to ask you to enter the `Username` and `Password` when you would like to connect to the internet. And then click `Login`.

Authentication

Username:

Password:

Step 4. Show the time left

When you pass the authentication, a message box will appear to tell you how long the connection will remain.

http://192.168.17...

Time Left:

[logout](#)

6.3.2 PoP3(s) Setting

Step 1. Configure Pop3(s) Settings

Enter Server IP and Server Port. Check the Encryption as SSL. Click Apply to store the settings.

Basic Setup > Authentication > Authentication > Pop3(s)

Authentication Exempt Host

Enable Authentication

Timeout(min)

Authentication Type Local Pop3(s) Imap(s) Radius LDAP

POP3(s) Setting

Server IP

Server Port

Encryption SSL

6.3.3 Imap(s) Setting

Step 1. Configure Imap(s) Settings

Enter Server IP and Server Port. Check the Encryption as SSL. Click Apply to store the settings.

Basic Setup > Authentication > Authentication > Imap(s)

Authentication Exempt Host

Enable Authentication

Timeout(min)

Authentication Type Local Pop3(s) Imap(s) Radius LDAP

IMAP Setting

Server IP

Server Port

Encryption SSL

6.3.4 Radius Setting

Step 1. Configure Radius Settings

If you have configured RADIUS support and a user is required to authenticate using a RADIUS server, the DFL-1500 then will contact the RADIUS server for authentication.

Enter Server IP/Server Port and enter the RADIUS Server Secret. Click Apply to store the settings.

Basic Setup > Authentication > Authentication > Radius

Authentication Exempt Host

Enable Authentication

Timeout(min)

Authentication Type Local Pop3(s) Imap(s) Radius LDAP

RADIUS Setting

Server IP

Server Port

Secret

6.3.5 LDAP Setting

Step 1. Configure LDAP Settings

If you have configured LDAP support and a user is required to authenticate using a LDAP server, the DFL-1500 will then contact the LDAP server for authentication. To authentication with the DFL-1500, the user enters a user name and password. The DFL-1500 sends this user name and password to the LDAP server. If the LDAP server can authenticate the user, the user is successfully authenticated with the DFL-1500.

Enter LDAP Server IP and then enter the distinguished name (Base DN) used to look up entries on the LDAP server. For example, you can use the Base DN like `ou=accouts,dc=dlink,dc=com`, where `ou` is organization unit and `dc` is domain component. Enter the common name identifier as UID (it may be named as `cn`) for the LDAP server.

Basic Setup > Authentication > Authentication > LDAP

Authentication Exempt Host

Enable Authentication

Timeout(min)

Authentication Type Local Pop3(s) Imap(s) Radius LDAP

LDAP Setting

Server IP

Base DN

UID

6.3.6 Exempt Host

Step 2. Configuring the Exempt Host

Enter the exempt host IP Address, and click Add to add an IP address. When enabling authentication, the exempt IP address list will pass the authentication.

Basic Setup > Authentication > Exempt Host

Authentication Exempt Host

When enable Authentication, it will pass Authentication with following IP hosts:

IP Address: (Ex: 127.0.0.1)

Part III

NAT、Routing & Firewall

Chapter 7

NAT

This chapter introduces NAT and explains how to implement it in DFL-1500.

To facilitate the explanation on how DFL-1500 implements NAT and how to use it, we zoom in the left part of Figure 1-7 into Figure 7-1.

7.1 Demands

1. The number of public IP address allocated to each Internet subscribers is often very limited compared to the number of PCs in the LAN1. Additionally, public-IP hosts are directly exposed to the Internet and have more chances to be cracked by intruders. As the Figure 7-1 illustrated, you hope all the pcs located at LAN1 and DMZ1 can connect internet through limited IP address (61.2.1.1).

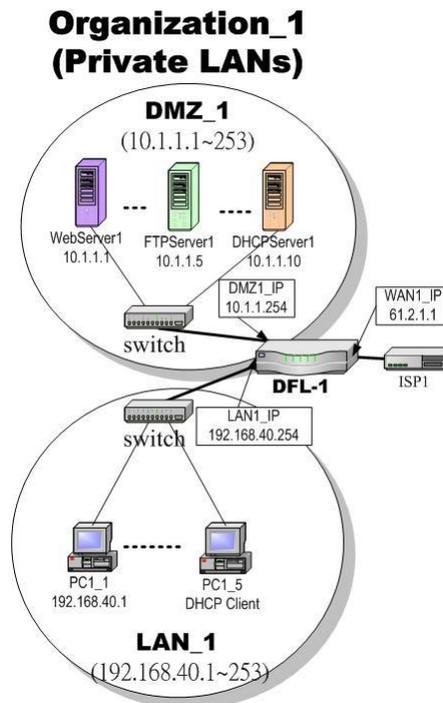


Figure 7-1 All the internal PCs can connect internet through limited WAN IP address by using NAT technology

2. Internet servers provided by your company may open many ports in default that may be dangerous if exposed to the public Internet. As the Figure 7-2 illustrated, we make the real servers hide behind the DFL-1500. And all the internet clients can still access the service of servers.

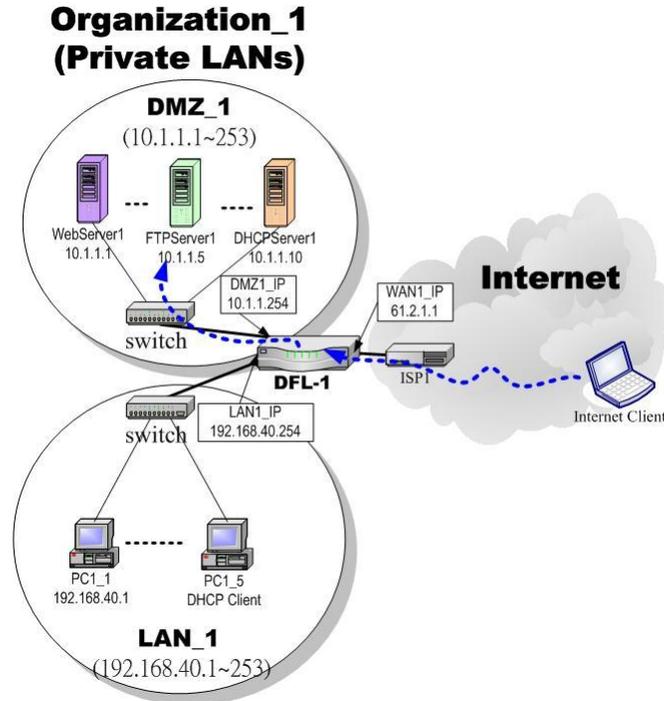


Figure 7-2 Internet clients can access the server behind the DFL-1500

7.2 Objectives

1. Let PC1_1~PC1_5 connect to the Internet.
2. As the Figure 7-2 illustrated, the clients will connect to the DFL-1500. Then DFL-1500 will forward the packet to the real server. So FTPServer1 (10.1.1.5) will be accessed by other Internet users.

7.3 Methods

1. Assign private IP addresses to the PC1_1~PC1_5. Setup NAT at DFL-1500 to map those assigned private hosts under LAN1 to the public IP address WAN1_IP at the WAN1 side.
2. Assign a private IP address to the FTPServer1. Setup Virtual Server at DFL-1500 to redirect “any connections towards some port of WAN1” to the port 21 at the FTPServer1.

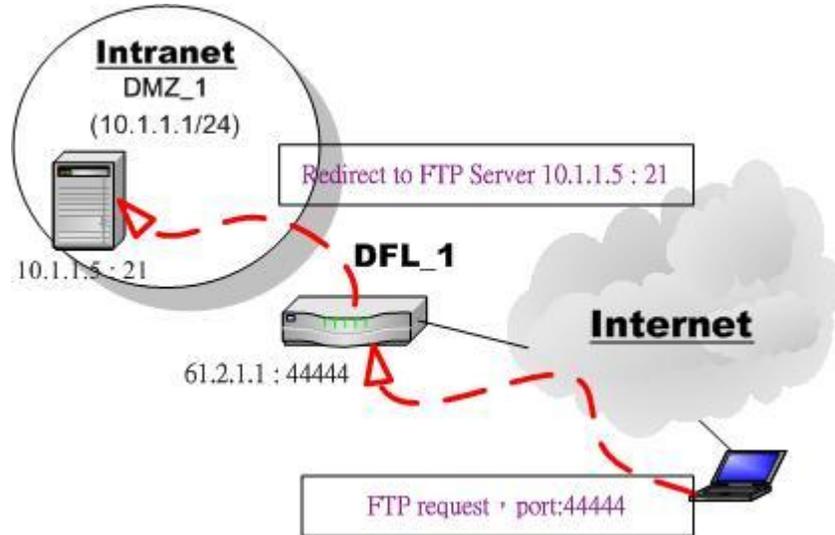


Figure 7-3 DFL-1500 plays the role as Virtual Server

As the above Figure 7-3 illustrates, the server 10.1.1.5 provides FTP service. But it is located on the DMZ region behind DFL-1500. And DFL-1500 will act as a Virtual Server role which redirects the packets to the real server 10.1.1.5. And you can announce to the internet users that there exists a ftp server IP/port is 61.2.1.1/44444. So, all the internet users will just connect the 61.2.1.1/44444 to get ftp service.

7.4 Steps

7.4.1 Setup Many-to-one NAT rules

Step 1. Enable NAT

Select the Basic from the list of Network Address Translation Mode. Click Apply. Now the DFL-1500 will automatically set the NAT rules for LAN/DMZ zones. Namely, all internal networks can establish connections to the outside world if the WAN settings are correct.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > NAT > Status

Status
 NAT Rules
 Virtual Servers

Network Address Translation Mode: Basic

Network Address Translation (NAT) translates the IP/port for

- Internal-to-External traffic:** map the conditioned internal IPs/ports into the specified external IPs/ports.
Reset NAT rules
- External-to-Internal traffic:** map the conditioned external IPs/ports into the specified internal IPs/ports.
Reset Server rules

Modes:

- None: The DFL-1500 is in routing mode without performing any address translation.
- Basic: The DFL-1500 automatically performs Many-to-One NAT for all LAN/DMZ subnet IP ranges.
- Full Feature: The DFL-1500 performs routing and NAT simultaneously. It performs several kinds of NAT on the conditioned IP subnet, while performing routing on other IP subnets.

Total Configured NAT Rules: 3
 Vacant NAT Rules: 197
 Total Configured Server Rules: 0
 Vacant Server Rules: 200

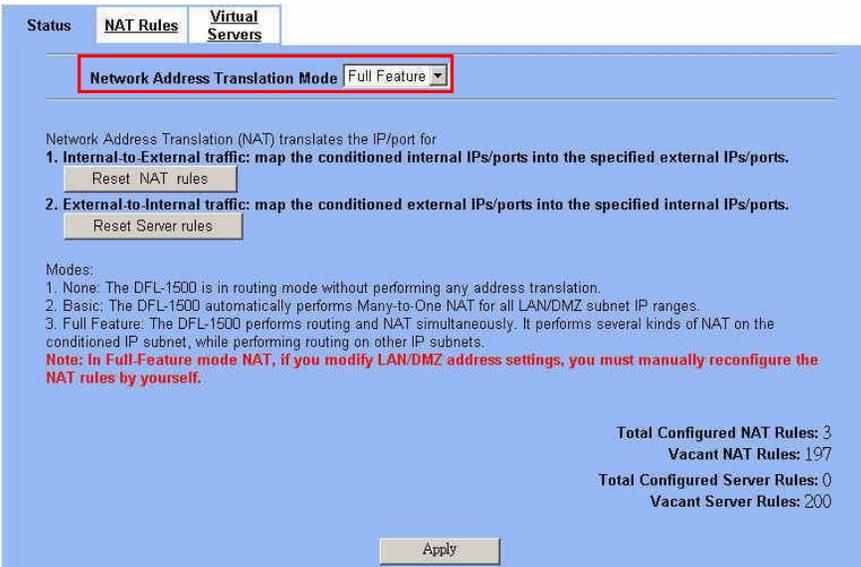
Apply

Part III

NAT、Routing & Firewall

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	Range / Format	EXAMPLE
Network Address Translation Mode	Determine what NAT type you are using in your network topology. Refer more information in the section 7.5.5.	None / Basic / Full Feature	Basic
BUTTON	DESCRIPTION		
Reset NAT Rules	Reset NAT rules to the default status		
Reset Server Rules	Clear all the Virtual Server rules.		
Clear active NAT/Server sessions	Clear all the active NAT/Virtual Server sessions.		
Apply	Apply the settings which have been configured.		
Reset	Clean the filled data and restore the original.		

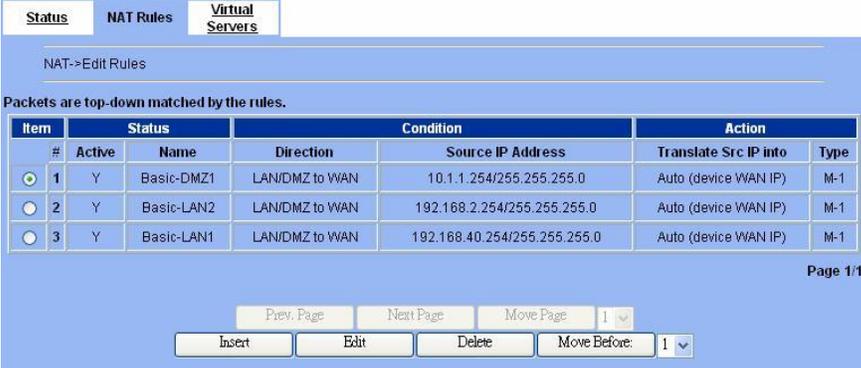
Table 7-1 Determine Network Address Translation Mode

<p>Step 2. Check NAT Rules</p> <p>As described in the above, the DFL-1500 has set the rules for the LAN/DMZ zones. They all belong to the Many-to-One (M-1) type that will map many private addresses to the automatically chosen public IP address. When the WAN interfaces change the IP, these rules do not require any manual modifications for the changed public IP addresses. The rules will reload the new settings automatically. Besides, you cannot insert/edit any rules under the Basic mode.</p>	<p>ADVANCED SETTINGS > NAT > NAT Rules</p> 
<p>Step 3. Switch the NAT Mode</p> <p>Select the Full Feature from the list of Network Address Translation Mode. Click Apply. After applying the setting, the page will highlight a warning saying that the rules are no more automatically maintained by the DFL-1500. If you change the LAN/DMZ IP settings, you have to manually update related rules by yourself. Otherwise, hosts in your LAN/DMZ cannot establish connections to the hosts in the WAN side.</p>	<p>ADVANCED SETTINGS > NAT > Status</p> 

Step 4. Customize NAT Rules

In the full-feature mode, the rules can be further customized. Incoming packets from LAN/DMZ zones are top-down matched by the NAT rules. Namely, NAT implements first match. Select the rule item that you want to do with: insert a new rule before it; delete it; move it before the list-box chosen item.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > NAT > NAT Rules



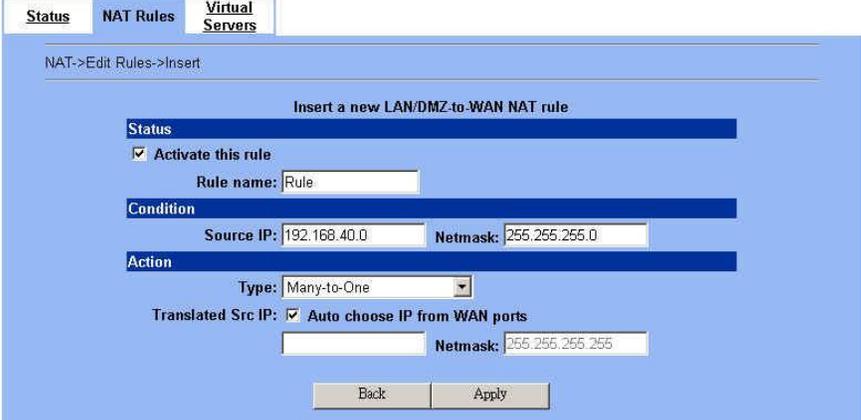
The screenshot shows the 'NAT Rules' configuration page. At the top, there are tabs for 'Status', 'NAT Rules', and 'Virtual Servers'. Below the tabs, there's a header 'NAT->Edit Rules'. A note states 'Packets are top-down matched by the rules.' Below this is a table with columns: Item, Active, Name, Direction, Condition (Source IP Address), Action (Translate Src IP into), and Type. The table contains three rows: 1 (Basic-DMZ1, LAN/DMZ to WAN, 10.1.1.254/255.255.255.0, Auto (device WAN IP), M-1), 2 (Basic-LAN2, LAN/DMZ to WAN, 192.168.2.254/255.255.255.0, Auto (device WAN IP), M-1), and 3 (Basic-LAN1, LAN/DMZ to WAN, 192.168.40.254/255.255.255.0, Auto (device WAN IP), M-1). At the bottom, there are navigation buttons: 'Prev. Page', 'Next Page', 'Move Page', '1', 'Insert', 'Edit', 'Delete', and 'Move Before: 1'.

Step 5. Insert NAT Rule

Step 5.a — Insert an Many-to-One Rule

As described in the above, Many-to-One NAT is the default NAT rule type in the Basic mode. If you have other alias LAN/DMZ subnets, you can manually add a Many-to-One NAT rule for them. First select the Type as Many-to-One, check the Activate this rule, enter a Rule name for this rule, enter the private-IP subnet (an IP address with a netmask) to be translated, and enter the public IP address for being translated into. You can check the Auto choose IP from WAN ports. The DFL-1500 will automatically determine which WAN IP is to be translated into.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > NAT > NAT Rules > Insert



The screenshot shows the 'Insert' form for a new LAN/DMZ-to-WAN NAT rule. It has sections for 'Status', 'Condition', and 'Action'. Under 'Status', there's a checked checkbox for 'Activate this rule' and a text field for 'Rule name'. Under 'Condition', there are text fields for 'Source IP' (192.168.40.0) and 'Netmask' (255.255.255.0). Under 'Action', there's a dropdown for 'Type' set to 'Many-to-One', a checked checkbox for 'Translated Src IP: Auto choose IP from WAN ports', and a text field for 'Netmask' (255.255.255.255). At the bottom are 'Back' and 'Apply' buttons.

	FIELD	DESCRIPTION	Range / Format	EXAMPLE
Status	Activate this rule	The NAT rule is enabled or not	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
	Rule name	The NAT rule name	text string	Rule
Condition	Source IP / Netmask	Compared with the incoming packets, whether Source IP/Netmask is matched or not.	IPv4 format	192.168.40.0 / 255.255.255.0
Action	Type	Determine what NAT method you are using in the specified NAT rule. Refer more information in the section 7.5.	Many-to-One / Many-to-Many / One-to-One / One-to-One (bidirectional)	Many-to-One
	Translated Src IP (Auto choose IP from WAN ports)	Only work in Many-to-One type, the public IP address will be assigned by the default wan link.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
	Space / Netmask	When NAT type is not Many-to-One, we must specify IP address / Netmask directly.	IPv4 format	N/A

Table 7-2 Add a NAT rule

Step 5.b — Insert an Many-to-Many Rule

If your ISP has assigned a range of public IP to your company, you can tell DFL-1500 to translate the private IP addresses into the pool of public IP addresses. The DFL-1500 will use the first public IP until DFL-1500 uses up all source ports for the public IP. DFL-1500 will then choose the second public IP from the address pool. Select *Many-to-Many* from the *Type*. Enter the subnet with an IP address and a netmask. Other fields are the same with those of *Many-to-One* rules. However, the DFL-1500 will no longer choose the device IP for you. It will choose the IP from the address pool you have entered.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > NAT > NAT Rules > Insert

The screenshot shows the 'NAT->Edit Rules->Insert' configuration page. The 'Virtual Servers' tab is selected. The page title is 'Insert a new LAN/DMZ-to-WAN NAT rule'. Under the 'Status' section, 'Activate this rule' is checked. The 'Rule name' field contains 'Rule'. Under the 'Condition' section, 'Source IP' is '192.168.40.0' and 'Netmask' is '255.255.255.0'. Under the 'Action' section, 'Type' is set to 'Many-to-Many'. The 'Translated Src IP' section has 'Auto choose IP from WAN ports' checked, with '61.2.1.1' in the IP field and '255.255.255.252' in the Netmask field. 'Back' and 'Apply' buttons are at the bottom.

Step 5.c — Insert an One-to-One Rule

Though you may have many public IP address for translation, you may want to make some private IP to always use a public IP. In this case, you can select *One-to-One* from the *Type*, and enter the private-public IP address pair in the *Source IP* and the *Translated Source IP* fields.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > NAT > NAT Rules > Insert

The screenshot shows the 'NAT->Edit Rules->Insert' configuration page. The 'Virtual Servers' tab is selected. The page title is 'Insert a new LAN/DMZ-to-WAN NAT rule'. Under the 'Status' section, 'Activate this rule' is checked. The 'Rule name' field contains 'Rule'. Under the 'Condition' section, 'Source IP' is '192.168.40.0' and 'Netmask' is '255.255.255.255'. Under the 'Action' section, 'Type' is set to 'One-to-One'. The 'Translated Src IP' section has 'Auto choose IP from WAN ports' checked, with '61.2.1.1' in the IP field and '255.255.255.255' in the Netmask field. 'Back' and 'Apply' buttons are at the bottom.

Step 5.d — Insert a One-to-One (Bidirectional) Rule

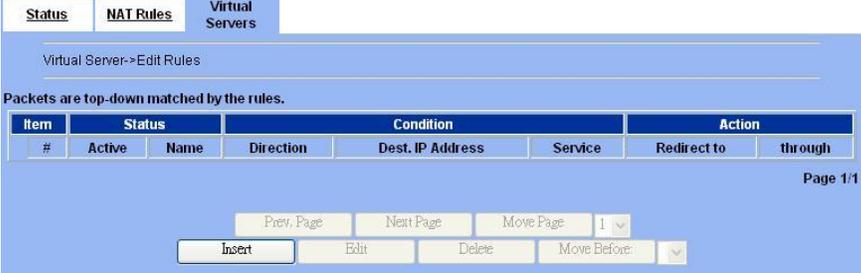
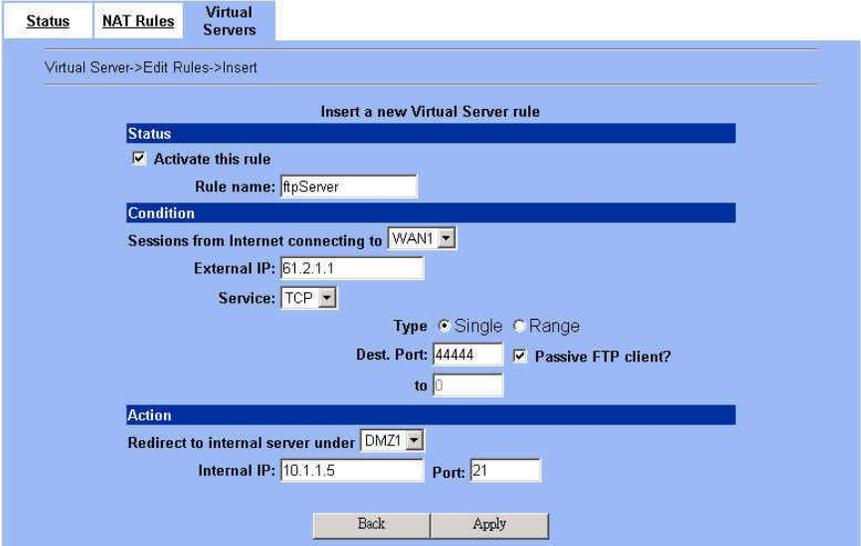
The above three modes allow LAN/DMZ-to-WAN sessions establishment but do not allow WAN-to-LAN/DMZ sessions. WAN-to-LAN/DMZ sessions are allowed by Virtual Server rules. You can make the *One-to-One* NAT in the above to incorporate the WAN-to-LAN/DMZ feature by selecting the *One-to-One (Bidirectional)* from the *Type*. Note that WAN-to-LAN/DMZ traffic will be blocked by the Firewall in default. You have to add a Firewall rule to allow such traffic. If you expect a LAN/DMZ host to be fully accessed by public Internet users, use this mode. Note that this mode is extremely dangerous because the host is fully exposed to the Internet and may be cracked. Always use Virtual Server rules first.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > NAT > NAT Rules > Insert

The screenshot shows the 'NAT->Edit Rules->Insert' configuration page. The 'Virtual Servers' tab is selected. The page title is 'Insert a new LAN/DMZ-to-WAN NAT rule'. Under the 'Status' section, 'Activate this rule' is checked. The 'Rule name' field contains 'Rule'. Under the 'Condition' section, 'Source IP' is '192.168.40.0' and 'Netmask' is '255.255.255.255'. Under the 'Action' section, 'Type' is set to 'One-to-One (bidirectional)'. The 'Translated Src IP' section has 'Auto choose IP from WAN ports' checked, with '61.2.1.1' in the IP field and '255.255.255.255' in the Netmask field. 'Back' and 'Apply' buttons are at the bottom.

7.4.2 Setup Virtual Server for the FtpServer1

<p>Step 1. Device IP Address Setup the IP Address and IP Subnet Mask for the DFL-1500 of the DMZ1 interface.</p>	<p>BASIC SETUP > DMZ Settings > DMZ1 Status</p> <p>DMZ1 Status IP Alias</p> <p>DMZ1 TCP/IP</p> <p>IP Address: 10.1.1.254 IP Subnet Mask: 255.255.255.0</p> <p>DHCP Setup</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable DHCP Server</p> <p>IP Pool Starting Address: 10.1.1.1</p> <p>Pool Size(max size: 253): 20</p> <p>Primary DNS Server: 10.1.1.254</p> <p>Secondary DNS Server: 0.0.0.0</p> <p>Lease time(sec): 7200</p> <p>Routing Protocol: None</p> <p>OSPF Area ID: </p> <p>Apply</p>																												
<p>Step 2. Client IP Range Enable the DHCP server if you want to use DFL-1500 to assign IP addresses to the computers under DMZ1. Here we make the DHCP feature enabled.</p>	<p>ADVANCED SETTINGS > NAT > Status</p> <p>Status NAT Rules Virtual Servers</p> <p>Network Address Translation Mode: Basic</p> <p>Network Address Translation (NAT) translates the IP/port for</p> <p>1. Internal-to-External traffic: map the conditioned internal IPs/ports into the specified external IPs/ports.</p> <p>Reset NAT rules</p> <p>2. External-to-Internal traffic: map the conditioned external IPs/ports into the specified internal IPs/ports.</p> <p>Reset Server rules</p> <p>Modes:</p> <p>1. None: The DFL-1500 is in routing mode without performing any address translation.</p> <p>2. Basic: The DFL-1500 automatically performs Many-to-One NAT for all LAN/DMZ subnet IP ranges.</p> <p>3. Full Feature: The DFL-1500 performs routing and NAT simultaneously. It performs several kinds of NAT on the conditioned IP subnet, while performing routing on other IP subnets.</p> <p>Total Configured NAT Rules: 3 Vacant NAT Rules: 197</p> <p>Total Configured Server Rules: 0 Vacant Server Rules: 200</p> <p>Apply</p>																												
<p>Step 3. Apply the Changes Click Apply to save your settings.</p>	<p>ADVANCED SETTINGS > NAT > NAT Rules</p> <p>Status NAT Rules Virtual Servers</p> <p>NAT->Edit Rules</p> <p>Packets are top-down matched by the rules.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Item</th> <th>Status</th> <th>Name</th> <th>Direction</th> <th>Condition</th> <th>Action</th> <th>Type</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Basic-DMZ1</td> <td>LAN/DMZ to WAN</td> <td>10.1.1.254/255.255.255.0</td> <td>Auto (device WAN IP)</td> <td>M-1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Basic-LAN2</td> <td>LAN/DMZ to WAN</td> <td>192.168.2.254/255.255.255.0</td> <td>Auto (device WAN IP)</td> <td>M-1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td>Y</td> <td>Basic-LAN1</td> <td>LAN/DMZ to WAN</td> <td>192.168.40.254/255.255.255.0</td> <td>Auto (device WAN IP)</td> <td>M-1</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Page 1/1</p> <p>Prev. Page Next Page Move Page: 1</p> <p>Insert Edit Delete Move Before: 1</p>	Item	Status	Name	Direction	Condition	Action	Type	1	Y	Basic-DMZ1	LAN/DMZ to WAN	10.1.1.254/255.255.255.0	Auto (device WAN IP)	M-1	2	Y	Basic-LAN2	LAN/DMZ to WAN	192.168.2.254/255.255.255.0	Auto (device WAN IP)	M-1	3	Y	Basic-LAN1	LAN/DMZ to WAN	192.168.40.254/255.255.255.0	Auto (device WAN IP)	M-1
Item	Status	Name	Direction	Condition	Action	Type																							
1	Y	Basic-DMZ1	LAN/DMZ to WAN	10.1.1.254/255.255.255.0	Auto (device WAN IP)	M-1																							
2	Y	Basic-LAN2	LAN/DMZ to WAN	192.168.2.254/255.255.255.0	Auto (device WAN IP)	M-1																							
3	Y	Basic-LAN1	LAN/DMZ to WAN	192.168.40.254/255.255.255.0	Auto (device WAN IP)	M-1																							
<p>Step 4. Check NAT Status The default setting of NAT is in Basic Mode. After applying the Step 3, the NAT is automatically configured with the rules to let all private-IP LAN/DMZ-to-WAN requests to be translated with the public IP assigned by the ISP.</p>	<p>Step 5. Check NAT Rules The DFL-1500 has added the NAT rules automatically as right diagram described. The rule Basic-DMZ1 (number 1) means that, when matching the condition (requests of LAN/DMZ-to-WAN direction with its source IP falling in the range of 10.1.1.254/255.255.255.0), the request will be translated into a public-source-IP requests, and then be forwarded to the destinations.</p>																												

<p>Step 6. Setup IP for the FTP Server Assign an IP of 10.1.1.1/255.255.255.0 to the FTP server under DMZ1. Assume the FTP Server is at 10.1.1.5. And it is listening on the well-known port (21).</p>	
<p>Step 7. Setup Server Rules Insert a virtual server rule by clicking the Insert button.</p>	<p>ADVANCED SETTINGS > NAT > Virtual Servers</p>  <p>The screenshot shows the 'Virtual Servers' configuration page. At the top, there are tabs for 'Status', 'NAT Rules', and 'Virtual Servers'. Below the tabs, there is a header 'Virtual Server->Edit Rules'. A message states 'Packets are top-down matched by the rules.' Below this is a table with columns: Item #, Status (Active), Name, Direction, Condition (Dest. IP Address, Service), and Action (Redirect to, through). At the bottom, there are navigation buttons: 'Prev. Page', 'Next Page', 'Move Page' (set to 1), 'Insert', 'Edit', 'Delete', and 'Move Before'.</p>
<p>Step 8. Customize the Rule Customize the rule name as the ftpServer. For any packets with its destination IP equaling to the WAN1 IP (61.2.1.1) and destination port equaling to 44444, ask DFL-1500 to translate the packet's destination IP/port into 10.1.1.5/21. Check the Passive FTP client? to maximize the compatibility of the FTP protocol. This is useful if you want to provide connectivity to passive FTP clients. For passive FTP clients, the server will return them the private IP address and the port number for them to connect back to do data transmissions. Since the private IP from them cannot be routed to our zone, the data connections would fail. After enabling this feature, the DFL-1500 will translate the private IP/port into an IP/port of its own. Thus the problem is gracefully solved. Click Apply to proceed.</p>	<p>ADVANCED SETTINGS > NAT > Virtual Servers > Insert</p>  <p>The screenshot shows the 'Insert' configuration page for a new Virtual Server rule. It has tabs for 'Status', 'NAT Rules', and 'Virtual Servers'. The page title is 'Virtual Server->Edit Rules->Insert'. The main heading is 'Insert a new Virtual Server rule'. Under the 'Status' section, there is a checkbox 'Activate this rule' which is checked, and a text field for 'Rule name' containing 'ftpServer'. Under the 'Condition' section, there is a dropdown for 'Sessions from Internet connecting to' set to 'WAN1', an 'External IP' field with '61.2.1.1', a 'Service' dropdown set to 'TCP', and 'Type' radio buttons for 'Single' (selected) and 'Range'. The 'Dest. Port' is '44444' with a checked 'Passive FTP client?' checkbox, and a 'to' field with '0'. Under the 'Action' section, there is a dropdown for 'Redirect to internal server under' set to 'DMZ1', an 'Internal IP' field with '10.1.1.5', and a 'Port' field with '21'. At the bottom, there are 'Back' and 'Apply' buttons.</p>

	FIELD	DESCRIPTION	Range / Format	EXAMPLE
Status	Activate this rule	The Virtual Server rule is enabled or not	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
	Rule name	The Virtual Server rule name	text string	ftpServer
Condition	Sessions from Internet connecting to	Which interface does the connected session come from?	WAN interfaces	WAN1
	External IP	The public IP address of the Virtual Server.	IPv4 format	61.2.1.1
	Service	The service which is provided by the real server.	TCP / UDP	TCP
	Type	Port is Single or Range	Single / Range	Single
	Dest Port	The TCP/UDP port number which is provided by the real server.	1 ~65534	44444

	Passive FTP client	If the Passive FTP client is checked, it will connect to the internal DMZ FTP server of DFL-1500 when FTP client uses passive mode. Otherwise, it will not work.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
Action	Redirect to internal server under	The subnet which is located the virtual server.	LAN / DMZ regions	DMZ1
	Internal IP	The IP address which is actually transferred to the internal DMZ	IPv4 format	10.1.1.5
	Port	The port number which is actually transferred to the internal DMZ. If you filled 0 in this field, it means that the real connected port is the same as the translated destination port.	0 ~ 65534	21

Table 7-3 Add a Virtual Server rule

Step 9. View the Result

Now any request towards the DFL-1500's WAN1 IP (61.2.1.1) with port 44444 will be translated into a request towards 10.1.1.5 with port 21, and then be forwarded to the 10.1.1.5. The FTP server listening at port 21 in 10.1.1.5 will pick up the request.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > NAT > Virtual Servers

Status NAT Rules **Virtual Servers**

Virtual Server->Edit Rules

Packets are top-down matched by the rules.

Item	Status	Name	Direction	Condition	Service	Action
1	Y	ftpServer	From WAN1	61.2.1.1/255.255.255.255	TCP:44444	10.1.1.5:21 DMZ1

Page 1/1

1

7.5 NAT modes introduction

7.5.1 Many-to-One type

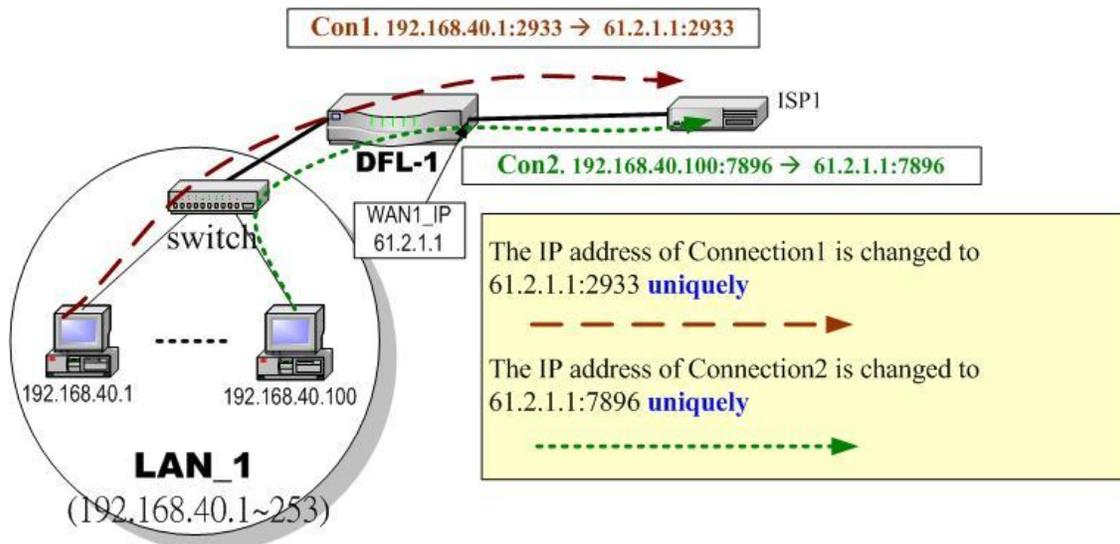


Figure 7-4 NAT Many-to-One type

As the above Figure 7-4 illustrated, NAT Many-to-One type means that many local PCs are translated into only one public IP address when the packets are forwarded out through the DFL-1500. Take Connection1 for example. Its IP address and port are translated from 192.168.40.1:2933 to 61.2.1.1:2933. In the same way, when the packets of Connection2 are forwarded out, its IP address is still translated to the same public IP address (61.2.1.1:7896).

7.5.2 Many-to-Many type

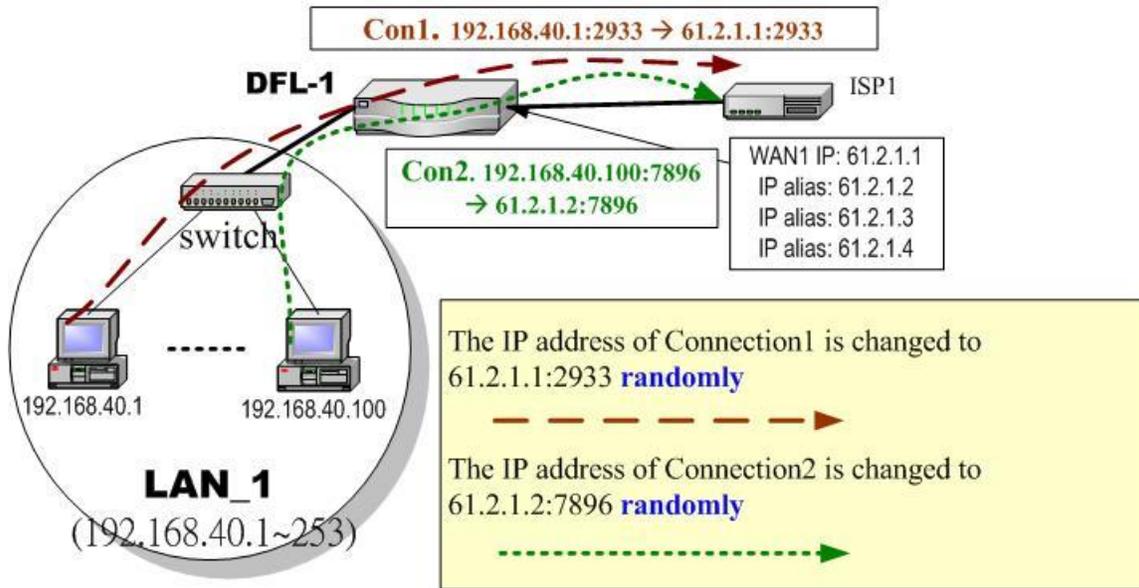


Figure 7-5 NAT Many-to-Many type

As the above Figure 7-5 illustrated, NAT Many-to-Many type means that many local PCs are translated into multiple public IP addresses when the packets are forwarded out through the DFL-1500. Take Connection1 for example. Its IP address and port are translated from 192.168.40.1:2933 to 61.2.1.1:2933. Until DFL-1500 uses out of all source ports of the public (61.2.1.1), DFL-1500 will then choose the second public IP (such as 61.2.1.2) from the address pool. For example, Connection2 are forwarded out, the source IP address will be translated into the second public IP address (61.2.1.2) from the public IP address pools. So the translated IP address (61.2.1.2:7896) is different from Connection1 one (61.2.1.1:2933).

7.5.3 One-to-One type

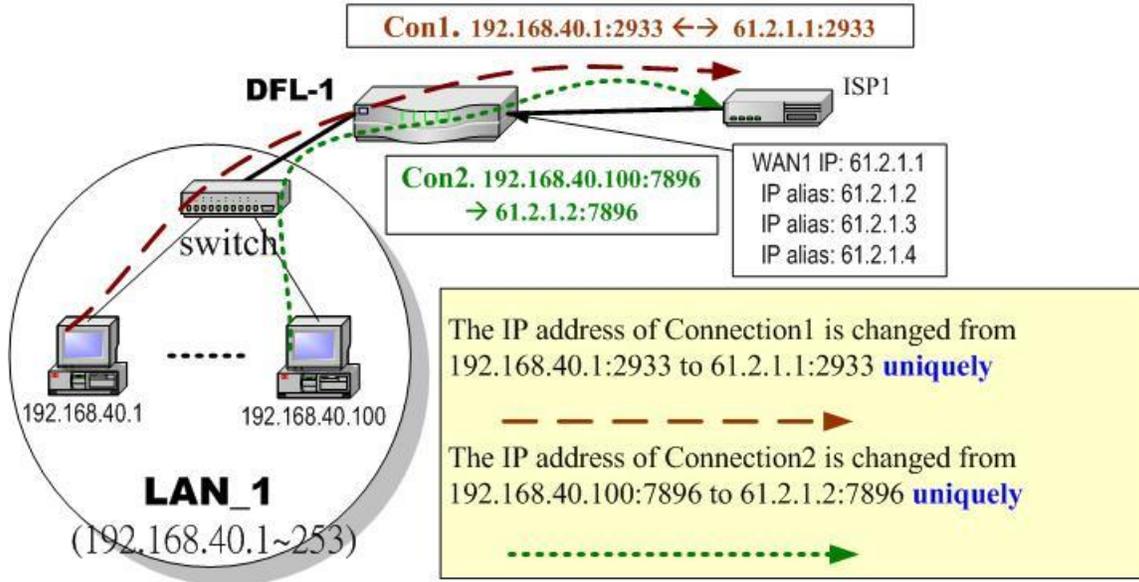


Figure 7-6 NAT One-to-One type

As the above Figure 7-6 illustrated, NAT One to One type means that each local PC is translated into a unique public IP address when the packets are forwarded out through the DFL-1500. Take Connection1 for example. Its IP address and port are translated from 192.168.40.1:2933 to 61.2.1.1:2933. But, when the packets of Connection2 are forwards out, the source IP address is translated to another dedicated public IP address(61.2.1.2:7896).

7.5.4 One-to-One (bidirectional) type

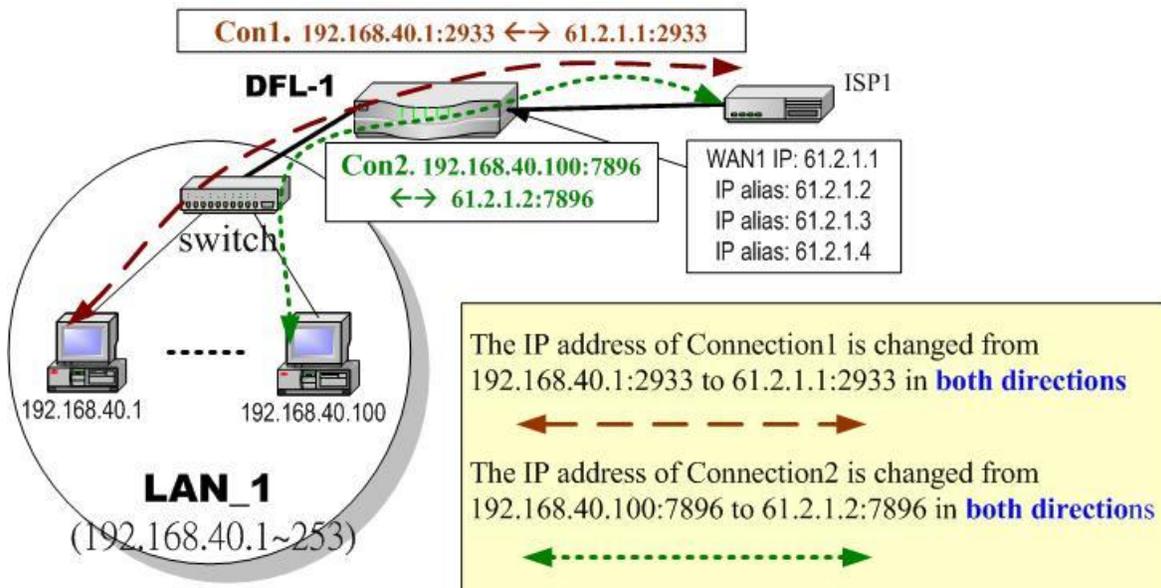


Figure 7-7 NAT One-to-One (bidirectional) type

As the above Figure 7-7 illustrated, NAT One to One (bidirectional) type means that each local PC is translated into a unique public IP address when the packets are forwarded out through the DFL-1500. Besides when packets came from internet to LAN, they were

translated to the same private IP address too. Take Connection1 for example. Its IP address and port are translated from 192.168.40.1:2933 to 61.2.1.1:2933 in both ways. Accordingly, the source IP address and port of the Connection2 are translated from 192.168.40.100:7896 to 61.2.1.2:7896 in both ways.

7.5.5 NAT modes & types

The following three NAT modes are supported by DFL-1500 now as the following Table 7-4.

NAT mode	Description
None	The DFL-1500 is in routing mode without performing any address translation.
Basic	The DFL-1500 automatically performs Many-to-One NAT for all LAN/DMZ subnets.
Full Feature	The DFL-1500 can be manually configured with Many-to-One, and Many-to-Many, One-to-One, and bidirectional One-to-One rules to do policy-based NAT.

Table 7-4 NAT modes overview

If you choose Full Feature mode of NAT at Table 7-4, you may need to edit the rule by yourself. Then you must determine the NAT type in the NAT rule. What meaning does each NAT type represent? How to determine which NAT type is best choice for you. You can lookup the explanations and suggestions at Table 7-5.

Type	Description	Usage moment
Many-to-One	Map a pool of private IP addresses to a single public IP address chosen from the WAN ports.	If the public IP addresses of your company is insufficient, and you prefer to increase the node which can connect to the internet. You can just choose the Many-to-One type to fit your request.
Many-to-Many	Map a pool of private IP addresses to a subnet range of public IP addresses chosen from the WAN ports. Only when all ports of the first public IP are used, it will then use the next public IP address for transferring by all private IPs.	If the public IP address of your company is not only one node (ex. you have applied extra-one ISP). You may use the Many-to-Many type to make the multiple public addresses sharing the outbound bandwidth. So your inbound and outbound traffic will be more flexible.
One-to-One	Map a single private IP address to a single public IP address chosen from the WAN ports. This was useful when you have multiple public IPs in the WAN ports. And you intended to map each local server to a unique public IP on the WAN port.	If you wish to specify a unique internal IP address to transfer a fixed external IP address. You can specify the One-to-One type.
One-to-One (bidirectional)	An internal host is fully mapped to a WAN IP address. Notice that you must add a firewall rule to forward WAN to LAN/DMZ traffic.	If you wish to expose the local pc onto the internet, and open all internet services outside. You can specify the One-to-One (bidirectional) type. This will make the local pc you specified fully exposed to the internet. Additionally you must add a firewall rule to allow WAN to LAN (or DMZ) traffic forward. Then you can finish the settings. Be careful to use this type, or it will endanger your network security.

Table 7-5 The NAT type comparison

Chapter 8

Routing

This chapter introduces how to add static routing and policy routing entries

To facilitate the explanation on how DFL-1500 implements routing and how to use it. We zoom in the left part of Figure 2-1 into Figure 8-1 and increase some devices for description.

8.1 Demands

1. There is only one local area (192.168.40.0/24) inside the LAN1 port. Now there is a new financial area (192.168.50.0/24) in the Figure 8-1. The financial area is connected with a router which is inside the LAN1 port of DFL-1500. So we need to add the configurations for the financial department.
2. Refer to the Figure 8-1 description. The bandwidth subscribed from ISP1 is insufficient so that some important traffic, say the traffic from PCs belonging to the General-Manager-Room department (192.168.40.192/255.255.192), is blocked by the other traffic. We hope that the employees of General-Manager-Room can have a dedicated bandwidth to improve the quality of connecting internet.

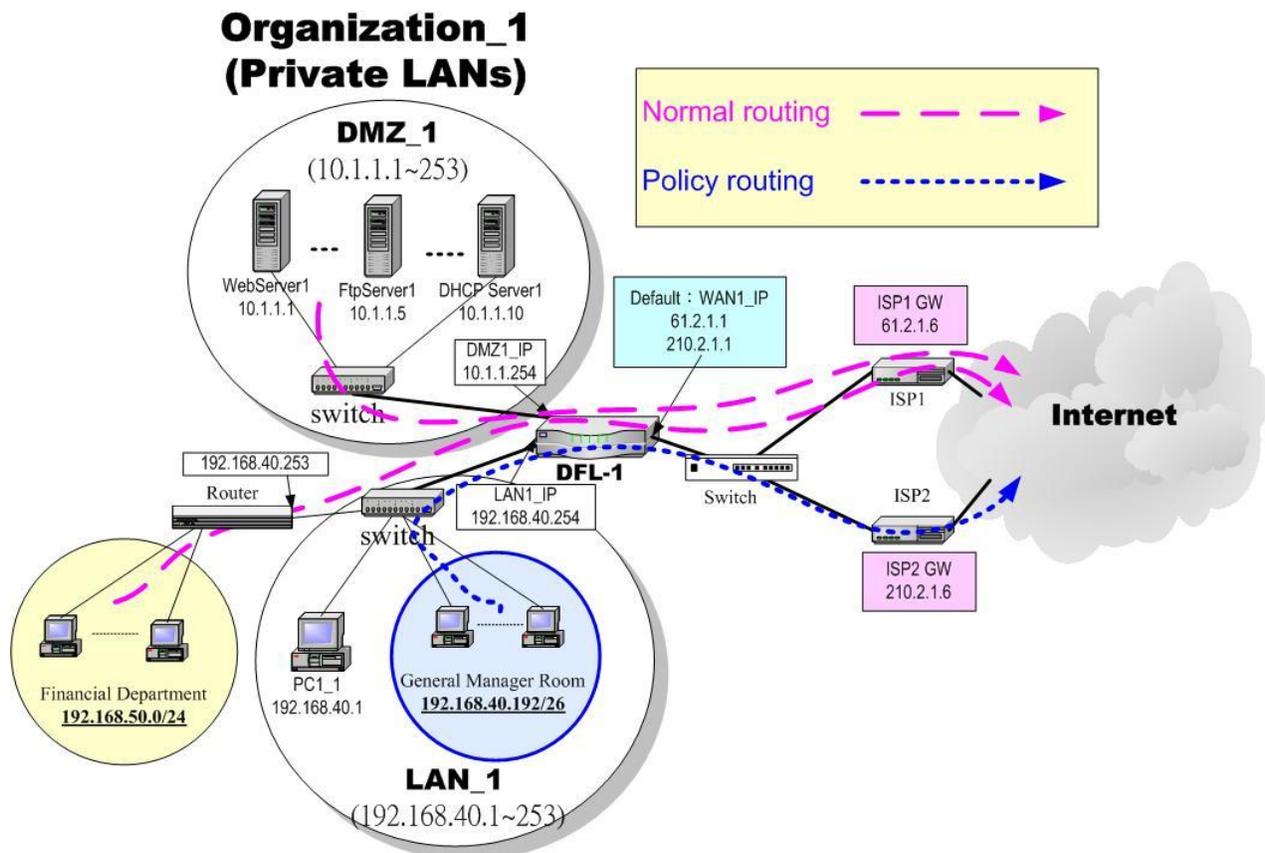


Figure 8-1 Add policy routing entry for the General-Manager-Room department

8.2 Objectives

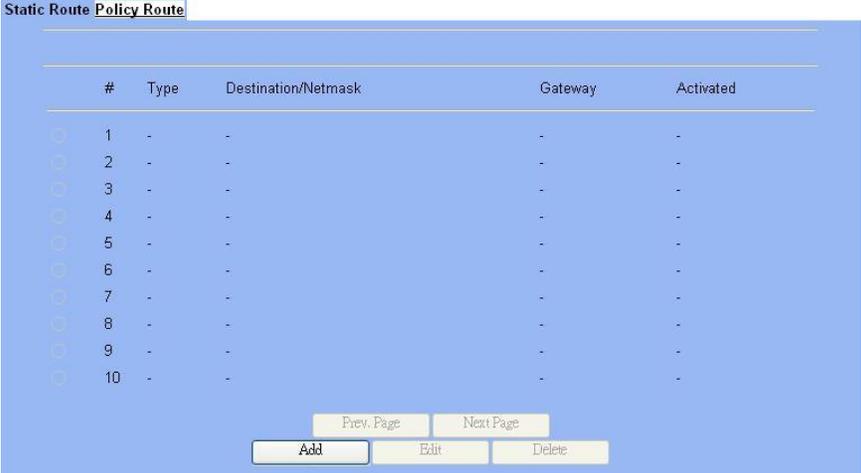
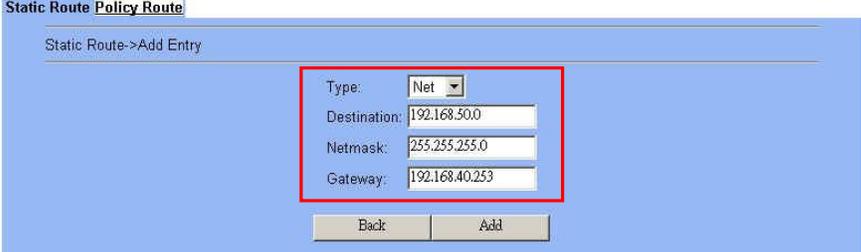
1. We need to let DFL-1500 knows how to forward the packets which is bound for financial department (192.168.50.0/24).
2. The network administrator plans to solve the problem by subscribing the second link (ISP2). He hopes that all the packets from the General-Manager-Room (192.168.40.192/26) will pass through the ISP2 link instead of the default ISP1 link.

8.3 Methods

1. Add a static routing entry to direct the packets towards 192.168.50.0/24 through the router (192.168.40.253).
2. Add a policy routing entry for the packets coming from General-Manager-Room department (192.168.40.192 / 255.255.255.192) through the ISP2 link.

8.4 Steps

8.4.1 Add a static routing entry

<p>Step 1. Add a static routing rule Click the Add button to the next process.</p>	<p>Advanced Settings > Routing > Static Route</p> 
<p>Step 2. Fill out the related field Fill in the Destination and the Netmask field with 192.168.50.0 and 255.255.255.0. Assign the next hop Gateway as 192.168.40.253 (Router IP address). Click Add to proceed.</p>	<p>Advanced Settings > Routing > Static Route > Add</p> 

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	Range / Format	EXAMPLE
Type	Determine this static routing entry record is multiple hosts (Net) or a single host (Host) ◦	Net / Host	Net
Destination	The destination IP address of this static routing entry record.	IPv4 format	192.168.50.0

Netmask	The destination IP Netmask of this static routing entry record.	IPv4 format	255.255.255.0
Gateway	The default gateway of this static routing entry record.	IPv4 format	192.168.40.253

Table 8-1 Add a static routing entry

<p>Step 3. View the result</p> <p>The static route has been stored. After filling data completely, view the static routing entries which have been set.</p>	<p>Advanced Settings > Routing > Static Route</p> <p>Static Route Policy Route</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>#</th> <th>Type</th> <th>Destination/Netmask</th> <th>Gateway</th> <th>Activated</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>Net</td> <td>192.168.50.0/255.255.255.0</td> <td>192.168.40.253</td> <td>Yes</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> </tr> <tr> <td>5</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> </tr> <tr> <td>6</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> </tr> <tr> <td>7</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> </tr> <tr> <td>8</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> </tr> <tr> <td>9</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> </tr> <tr> <td>10</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> <td>-</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Prev. Page Next Page</p> <p>Add Edit Delete</p>	#	Type	Destination/Netmask	Gateway	Activated	1	Net	192.168.50.0/255.255.255.0	192.168.40.253	Yes	2	-	-	-	-	3	-	-	-	-	4	-	-	-	-	5	-	-	-	-	6	-	-	-	-	7	-	-	-	-	8	-	-	-	-	9	-	-	-	-	10	-	-	-	-									
#	Type	Destination/Netmask	Gateway	Activated																																																													
1	Net	192.168.50.0/255.255.255.0	192.168.40.253	Yes																																																													
2	-	-	-	-																																																													
3	-	-	-	-																																																													
4	-	-	-	-																																																													
5	-	-	-	-																																																													
6	-	-	-	-																																																													
7	-	-	-	-																																																													
8	-	-	-	-																																																													
9	-	-	-	-																																																													
10	-	-	-	-																																																													
<p>Step 4. View the routing table</p> <p>You can notice there is an extra routing entry in the routing table. The indicated routing entry as right diagram is produced by static routing rule.</p>	<p>Device Status > System Status > Routing Table</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>System Status</th> <th>Network Status</th> <th>CPU & Memory</th> <th>DHCP Table</th> <th>Routing Table</th> <th>Active Sessions</th> <th>Top20 Sessions</th> <th>IPSec Sessions</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>#</td> <td>Type</td> <td>Destination/Netmask</td> <td>Gateway</td> <td>Interface</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>Default/Static</td> <td>0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0</td> <td>61.2.1.6</td> <td>WAN1</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>Net</td> <td>10.1.1.0/255.255.255.0</td> <td>10.1.1.254</td> <td>DMZ1</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td>Net</td> <td>61.2.1.0/255.255.255.248</td> <td>61.2.1.1</td> <td>WAN1</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>4</td> <td>Net</td> <td>192.168.2.0/255.255.255.0</td> <td>192.168.2.254</td> <td>LAN2</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>5</td> <td>Net</td> <td>192.168.40.0/255.255.255.0</td> <td>192.168.40.254</td> <td>LAN1</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>6</td> <td>Net/Static</td> <td>192.168.50.0/255.255.255.0</td> <td>192.168.40.253</td> <td>WAN1</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Refresh</p>	System Status	Network Status	CPU & Memory	DHCP Table	Routing Table	Active Sessions	Top20 Sessions	IPSec Sessions	#	Type	Destination/Netmask	Gateway	Interface				1	Default/Static	0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0	61.2.1.6	WAN1				2	Net	10.1.1.0/255.255.255.0	10.1.1.254	DMZ1				3	Net	61.2.1.0/255.255.255.248	61.2.1.1	WAN1				4	Net	192.168.2.0/255.255.255.0	192.168.2.254	LAN2				5	Net	192.168.40.0/255.255.255.0	192.168.40.254	LAN1				6	Net/Static	192.168.50.0/255.255.255.0	192.168.40.253	WAN1			
System Status	Network Status	CPU & Memory	DHCP Table	Routing Table	Active Sessions	Top20 Sessions	IPSec Sessions																																																										
#	Type	Destination/Netmask	Gateway	Interface																																																													
1	Default/Static	0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0	61.2.1.6	WAN1																																																													
2	Net	10.1.1.0/255.255.255.0	10.1.1.254	DMZ1																																																													
3	Net	61.2.1.0/255.255.255.248	61.2.1.1	WAN1																																																													
4	Net	192.168.2.0/255.255.255.0	192.168.2.254	LAN2																																																													
5	Net	192.168.40.0/255.255.255.0	192.168.40.254	LAN1																																																													
6	Net/Static	192.168.50.0/255.255.255.0	192.168.40.253	WAN1																																																													

8.4.2 Add a policy routing entry

Step 1. Setup the ISP2 link

We must add an IP alias record to the WAN1 port because a new ISP link has been applied. So. See section 3.4.3 for the full procedures. Here we add an IP alias of WAN1 as 210.2.1.1/255.255.255.248.

Basic Setup > WAN Settings > IP Alias

#	Interface	Aliases	Netmask
1	WAN1	210.2.1.1	255.255.255.248
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10

Step 2. Insert a policy routing entry

Click Insert button to add a policy routing entry.

Advanced Settings > Routing > Policy Route

Item #	Status	Name	Direction	Source IP Address	Dest. IP Address	Service	Forward to next-hop	Through

Step 3. Fill out the related field

For the General-Manager-Room department, we need to set an extra policy routing entry for them. So in the Status region, make sure the Activate this rule is enabled, and then fill in GenlManaRoom in the Rule name field. In the Condition region, we fill 192.168.40.192 in Source IP field. Fill 255.255.255.192 in the Netmask field. In the Action region, fill forward to WAN1 with next-hop gateway 210.2.1.6. After setting as above, the packets which match the condition, they will follow the predefined action to forward to the next hop.

Advanced Settings > Routing > Policy Route > Insert

	FIELD	DESCRIPTION	Range / Format	EXAMPLE
Status	Activate this rule	The policy routing rule is enabled or not.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
	Rule name	The policy routing rule name.	text string	GenlManaRoom
Condition	Incoming packets from	Packets comes from which interface	LAN / DMZ regions	LAN1
	Source IP & Netmask	Verify if the incoming packets belong to the range of the Source IP/Netmask in the policy routing rule.	IPv4 format / IPv4 format	192.168.40.192 / 255.255.255.192
	Dest IP & Netmask	Verify if the incoming packets belong to the range of the Dest IP/Netmask in the policy routing rule.	IPv4 format / IPv4 format	0.0.0.0 / 0.0.0.0
	Service	Verify what is the service of this packet?	ANY / TCP / UDP / ICMP	Any
	Configure src. port? Type Src. port	If the service is TCP or UDP, we can choose to configure or not to configure source port.	Enabled / Disabled	No
	Type	If we decide to configure source port, we must choose the port to be single or range.	Single / Range	N/A
	Src. Port	If we select single at above field, we just have to fill a port in the first blank space. If we select range at above field, we need to fill the range of the ports.	1 ~ 65534	N/A
	Configure dest. port? Type Dest. port	If the service is TCP or UDP, we can choose to configure or not to configure destination port.	Enabled / Disabled	No
	Type	If we decide to configure destination port, we must choose the port to be single or range.	Single / Range	N/A
	Dest. Port	If we select single at above field, we just have to fill a port in the first blank space. If we select range at above field, we need to fill the range of the ports.	1 ~ 65534	N/A
Action	Forward to	If the packet is matched to this rule, which interface does this packet sent out to?	WAN interfaces	WAN1
	Nexthop gateway IP	The next gateway IP address of forwarding interface.	IPv4 format	210.2.1.6

Table 8-2 Add a policy routing entry

Step 4. View the result

After filling data completely, view the policy routing entries which have been set.

Advanced Settings > Routing > Policy Route

Static Route Policy Route

Policy Routing->Edit Rules

Packets are top-down matched by the rules.

Item	Status		Condition				Action	
#	Active	Name	Direction	Source IP Address	Dest. IP Address	Service	Forward to next-hop	Through
1	Y	GeniManaRoom	From LAN1	192.168.40.192/255.255.255.192	Any	Any	210.2.1.6	WAN1

Page 1/1

Prev. Page Next Page Move Page 1

Insert Edit Delete Move Before: 1

Step 5. View the routing table

Finally click the "Routing Table" to see all the current routing table information.

Device Status > System Status > Routing Table

System Status Network Status CPU & Memory DHCP Table Routing Table Active Sessions Top20 Sessions IPSec Sessions

#	Type	Destination/Netmask	Gateway	Interface
1	Default/Static	0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0	61.2.1.6	WAN1
2	Net	10.1.1.0/255.255.255.0	10.1.1.254	DMZ1
3	Net	61.2.1.0/255.255.255.248	61.2.1.1	WAN1
4	Net	192.168.2.0/255.255.255.0	192.168.2.254	LAN2
5	Net	192.168.40.0/255.255.255.0	192.168.40.254	LAN1
6	Net/Static	192.168.50.0/255.255.255.0	192.168.40.253	WAN1
7	Net	210.2.1.0/255.255.255.0	210.2.1.1	WAN1

Refresh

Chapter 9

Firewall

This chapter introduces firewall and explains how to implement it.

9.1 Demands

1. All rules require source and destination addresses. You have to add addresses to the address list for each interface first if you would like to add an address to a rule between two interfaces. These addresses must be valid addresses for the network connected to that interface.
2. Suppose you would like to use services to control the types of communication accepted or denied by the firewall, you can add any of the predefined services or created services to a rule.
3. Suppose the MSN cannot be used in your company from Monday to Friday 9:00~12:00, 13:00~17:30, but you can use it any time after work. The administrator needs to create the schedules to meet the requirement.
4. Your company would like to protect some servers or users avoid their IP address snatched by others, and control the computers to let them accepted or denied by the firewall rule. IP/MAC binding protects the DFL-1500 unit and your network from IP spoofing attacks. IP spoofing attempts to use the IP address of a trusted computer to connect to or through the DFL-1500 unit from a different computer. The IP address of a computer can easily be changed to a trusted address, but MAC addresses are added to Ethernet cards at the factory and cannot easily be changed.
5. Administrators detect that PC1_1 in LAN_1 is doing something that may hurt our company and should instantly block his traffic towards the Internet.
6. A DMZ server was attacked by SYN-Flooding attack and requires the DFL-1500 to protect it.

9.2 Objectives

1. Block the traffic from PC1_1 in LAN1 to the Internet in WAN1.
2. Start the SYN-Flooding protection.

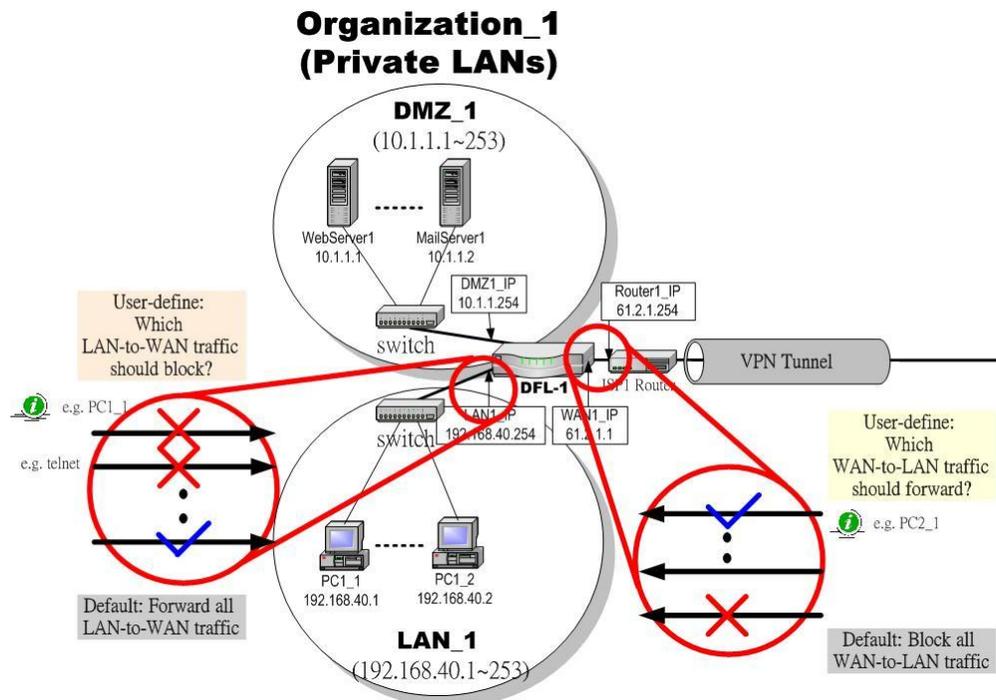


Figure 9-1 Setting up the firewall rule

9.3 Methods

1. Configure the Address/Service/Schedule first.
2. Add a LAN1-to-WAN1 Firewall rule to block PC1_1.
3. Start the SYN-Flooding protection by detecting statistical half-open TCP connections.

9.4 Steps

9.4.1 Setup Address

<p>Step 1. Address Settings</p> <p>Suppose you would like to configure a firewall rule, you must add addresses to the addresses list for each interface first.</p> <p>Click the <code>Objects</code> hyperlink and then select the Define Objects. Click <code>Insert</code> to add a new address object.</p>	<p>BASIC SETUP > Books > Address > Object</p> <p>Address <input type="radio"/> Service <input type="radio"/> Schedule <input type="radio"/></p> <p>[Objects] [Groups]</p> <p>Address -> Objects</p> <p>Define Objects on LAN1</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Item</th> <th>#</th> <th>Name</th> <th>Type</th> <th>Value</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td><input checked="" type="radio"/></td> <td>1</td> <td>LAN1_ALL</td> <td>Subnet</td> <td>0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Insert Edit Delete</p>	Item	#	Name	Type	Value	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	1	LAN1_ALL	Subnet	0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0
Item	#	Name	Type	Value							
<input checked="" type="radio"/>	1	LAN1_ALL	Subnet	0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0							
<p>Step 2. Insert a new Address object</p> <p>Enter the Address name. Select which address type the address object will be. And then enter the IP address.</p> <p>Note that address name should begin with alphabet, followed by alphabet/digits/dashes.</p>	<p>BASIC SETUP > Books > Address > Object > Insert</p> <p>Address <input type="radio"/> Service <input type="radio"/> Schedule <input type="radio"/></p> <p>[Objects] [Groups]</p> <p>Address -> Objects -> Add</p> <p>Insert a new Address object</p> <p>Name</p> <p>Address name: PC1_1</p> <p>Value</p> <p>Address Type:</p> <p><input type="radio"/> Subnet IP: 0.0.0.0 Mask: 255.255.255.0</p> <p><input type="radio"/> Range Start IP: 0.0.0.0 End IP: 255.255.255.255</p> <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> Host IP: 192.168.40.1</p> <p>Back Apply</p>										

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	Range / Format	EXAMPLE
Address name	The name of the address object.	text string	PC1_1
Address Type	The address type of the object.	Subnet/Range/Host	Host 192.168.40.1

Table 9-1 The field of the Address object

<p>Step 3. See the Address object settings</p> <p>After entering the new Address object, it will show the result in the “Object” page.</p> <p>Note: It is the same way to setup address objects in the other interfaces.</p>	<p>BASIC SETUP > Books > Address > Objects</p> <p>Address <u>Service</u> <u>Schedule</u></p> <p>[Objects] [Groups]</p> <p>Address -> Objects</p> <p>Define Objects on LAN1</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Item</th> <th>Name</th> <th>Type</th> <th>Value</th> </tr> <tr> <th>#</th> <th>Name</th> <th>Type</th> <th>Value</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>PC1_1</td> <td>Host</td> <td>192.168.40.1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>LAN1_ALL</td> <td>Subnet</td> <td>0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Insert Edit Delete</p>	Item	Name	Type	Value	#	Name	Type	Value	1	PC1_1	Host	192.168.40.1	2	LAN1_ALL	Subnet	0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0
Item	Name	Type	Value														
#	Name	Type	Value														
1	PC1_1	Host	192.168.40.1														
2	LAN1_ALL	Subnet	0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0														
<p>Step 4. Address Group Settings</p> <p>You can add, edit, and delete all other addresses as required. You can also organize related addresses into address group to simplify rule creation.</p> <p>Click the Groups hyperlink. Select WAN1 to define Address Groups, and then click Insert to proceed.</p>	<p>BASIC SETUP > Books > Address > Group</p> <p>Address <u>Service</u> <u>Schedule</u></p> <p>[Objects] [Groups]</p> <p>Address -> Groups</p> <p>Define Address Groups on LAN1</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Group</th> <th>Name</th> <th>Content</th> </tr> <tr> <th>#</th> <th>Name</th> <th>Content</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> </tbody> </table> <p>Insert Edit Delete</p>	Group	Name	Content	#	Name	Content										
Group	Name	Content															
#	Name	Content															
<p>Step 5. Add a address group</p> <p>Enter a Group Name to identify the address group. Select the addresses from the available address list and click right arrow to add them to the Members list. To remove addresses from address group, please select addresses from the Members list and then click left arrow.</p> <p>Note that group name should begin with alphabet, followed by alphabet/digits/dashes. You can add address groups to any interface. The address group can only contain addresses from that interface. Address group cannot have the same names as individual addresses. If an address group is included in a rule, it cannot be deleted unless it is first removed from the firewall rule.</p>	<p>BASIC SETUP > Books > Address > Group > Insert</p> <p>Address <u>Service</u> <u>Schedule</u></p> <p>[Objects] [Groups]</p> <p>Address -> Groups -> Add</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p style="text-align: center;">Insert a new group for LAN1</p> <p>Group Name : PC_Group1</p> <table style="width: 100%;"> <tr> <td style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> PC1_3 PC1_2 PC1_1 LAN1_ALL </td> <td style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;"> > < </td> <td style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> PC1_1 PC1_2 PC1_3 </td> </tr> </table> <p style="text-align: center;">Back Apply</p> </div>	PC1_3 PC1_2 PC1_1 LAN1_ALL	> <	PC1_1 PC1_2 PC1_3													
PC1_3 PC1_2 PC1_1 LAN1_ALL	> <	PC1_1 PC1_2 PC1_3															

9.4.2 Setup Service

Step 1. Service Settings

The DFL-1500 predefined firewall services are listed as right diagram. You can add these services to any firewall rule or you can add a service if you need to create a firewall rule for a service that is not in the predefined service list.

Select **Insert** to add a new service.

BASIC SETUP > Books > Service > Objects

Address Service Schedule

[Objects] [Groups]

Service -> Objects

Item	Name	Detail
<input type="radio"/>	1	AOL TCP/ALL>5190-5194
<input type="radio"/>	2	BGP TCP/ALL>179
<input type="radio"/>	3	DHCP-Relay UDP/ALL>67
<input type="radio"/>	4	DNS TCP/ALL>53,UDP/ALL>53
<input type="radio"/>	5	FINGER TCP/ALL>79
<input type="radio"/>	6	FTP TCP/ALL>21
<input type="radio"/>	7	GOPHER TCP/ALL>70
<input type="radio"/>	8	H323 TCP/ALL>1720,TCP/ALL>1503,UDP/ALL>1719
<input type="radio"/>	9	HTTP TCP/ALL>80
<input type="radio"/>	10	HTTPS TCP/ALL>443
<input type="radio"/>	11	IKE UDP/ALL>500
<input type="radio"/>	12	IMAP TCP/ALL>143
<input type="radio"/>	13	IRC TCP/ALL>6660-6669
<input type="radio"/>	14	LDAP TCP/ALL>389
<input type="radio"/>	15	NetMeeting TCP/ALL>1720
<input type="radio"/>	16	NFS TCP/ALL>111,TCP/ALL>2049,UDP/ALL>111,UDP/ALL>2049
<input type="radio"/>	17	NNTP TCP/ALL>119
<input type="radio"/>	18	NTP TCP/ALL>123,UDP/ALL>123
<input type="radio"/>	19	PC-Anywhere TCP/ALL>5631,UDP/ALL>5632
<input type="radio"/>	20	PING ICMP
<input type="radio"/>	21	POP3 TCP/ALL>110,UDP/ALL>110
<input type="radio"/>	22	PPTP TCP/ALL>1723
<input type="radio"/>	23	QUAKE UDP/ALL>26000,UDP/ALL>27000,UDP/ALL>27910,UDP/ALL>27960
<input type="radio"/>	24	RAUDIO UDP/ALL>7070
<input type="radio"/>	25	RLOGIN TCP/ALL>513
<input type="radio"/>	26	RIP UDP/ALL>520
<input type="radio"/>	27	SMTP TCP/ALL>25
<input type="radio"/>	28	SNMP TCP/ALL>161-162,UDP/ALL>161-162
<input type="radio"/>	29	SSH TCP/ALL>22,UDP/ALL>22
<input type="radio"/>	30	SYSLOG UDP/ALL>514
<input type="radio"/>	31	TALK UDP/ALL>517-518
<input type="radio"/>	32	TCP TCP
<input type="radio"/>	33	TELNET TCP/ALL>23
<input type="radio"/>	34	TFTP UDP/ALL>69
<input type="radio"/>	35	UDP UDP
<input type="radio"/>	36	UUCP UDP/ALL>540
<input type="radio"/>	37	VDOLIVE TCP/ALL>7000-7010
<input type="radio"/>	38	WAIS TCP/ALL>210
<input type="radio"/>	39	WINFRAME TCP/ALL>1494
<input type="radio"/>	40	X-WINDOWS TCP/ALL>6000-6063

Insert Edit Delete

Step 2. Insert a new service object

Enter the Service name. Select which protocol type (TCP, UDP, ICMP) used by this service. Specify a Source and Destination Port number range for the service. If this service uses single port, enter the number in the first blank. If the service has more than one port range, select add to specify additional protocols and port range. Select **Apply** to add a new service object.

Note that service name should begin with alphabet, followed by alphabet/digits/dashes.

BASIC SETUP > Books > Service > Insert

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	Range / Format	EXAMPLE
Service name	The name of the service object.	text string	ANY
Protocol Type	The protocol type of the service object.	TCP/UDP/ICMP	TCP/UDP/ICMP
Configure Source Port?	Configure the source port if yes.	Enable/Disable	N/A
Port type	The service port type.	Single/Range	N/A
Port number	The service port number.	text sting	N/A
Configure Destination port	Configure the destination port if any.	Enable/Disable	N/A

Table 9-2 The field of the Service object

Step 3. Add a service group

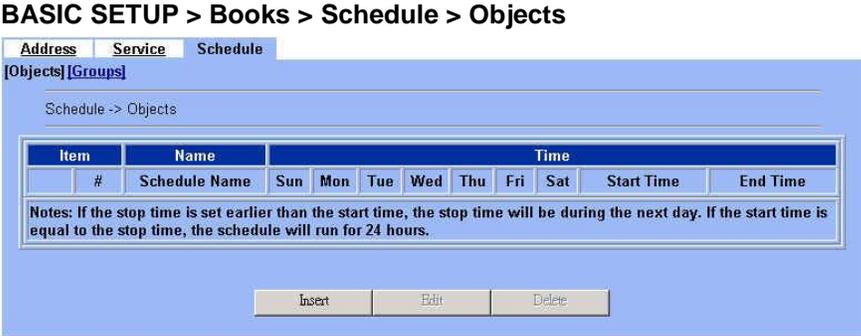
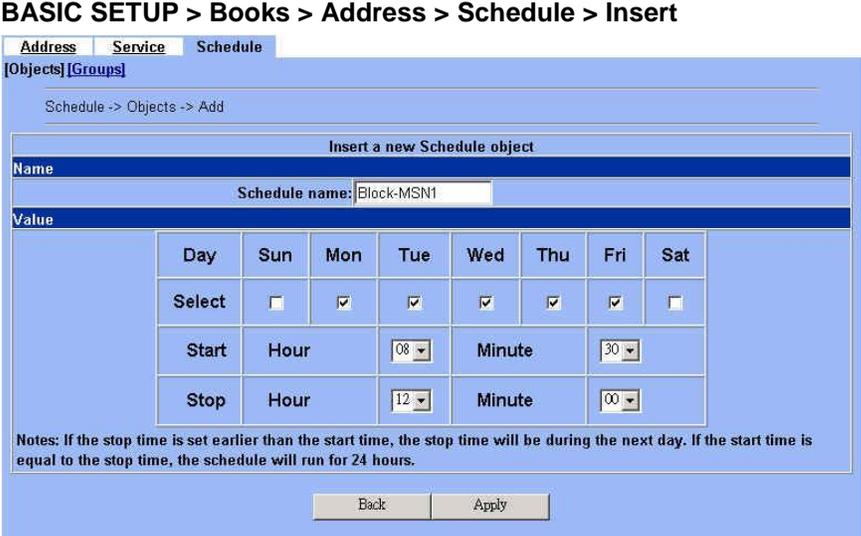
You can create groups of services to make it easier to add rules. A service group can contain predefined services and custom services in any combination. You cannot add service groups to another service group.

Click **Groups** hyperlink, and then click **Insert** to add a new service group. Enter a Group Name to identify the group. Select the services from the available services list and click right arrow to copy them to the Members list. If you would like to remove the services from the members list, just select the services and then click left arrow to remove them.

Note that group name should begin with alphabet, followed by alphabet/digits/dashes.

BASIC SETUP > Books > Service > Groups > Insert

9.4.3 Setup Schedule

<p>Step 1. Schedule Settings</p> <p>Use scheduling to control when rules are active or inactive.</p> <p>Select Insert to add a new service.</p>	<p>BASIC SETUP > Books > Schedule > Objects</p> 
<p>Step 2. Insert a new schedule object</p> <p>Enter the Schedule name. Select the Day you would like to active or inactive a firewall rule, and then select the Start/Stop time. Click Apply to add the schedule object.</p> <p>Suppose using MSN is forbidden in your company from 08:30~12:00, 13:00~17:30 during Monday to Friday, you have to add two schedule ranges (08:30~12:00 and 13:00~17:30) and then group them together in order for your company to make a firewall rule to block the MSN service.</p> <p>Note that schedule name should begin with alphabet, followed by alphabet/digits/dashes.</p>	<p>BASIC SETUP > Books > Address > Schedule > Insert</p> 

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	Range / Format	EXAMPLE
Schedule name	The name of the schedule object.	text string	Block-MSN1
Day	The days to active or inactive a firewall rule.	Sun ~ Sat	Mon ~ Fri
Start time	The start time of the schedule object.	24-hour format	08:30
Stop time	The stop time of the schedule object.	24-hour format	12:00

Table 9-3 The field of the Schedule object

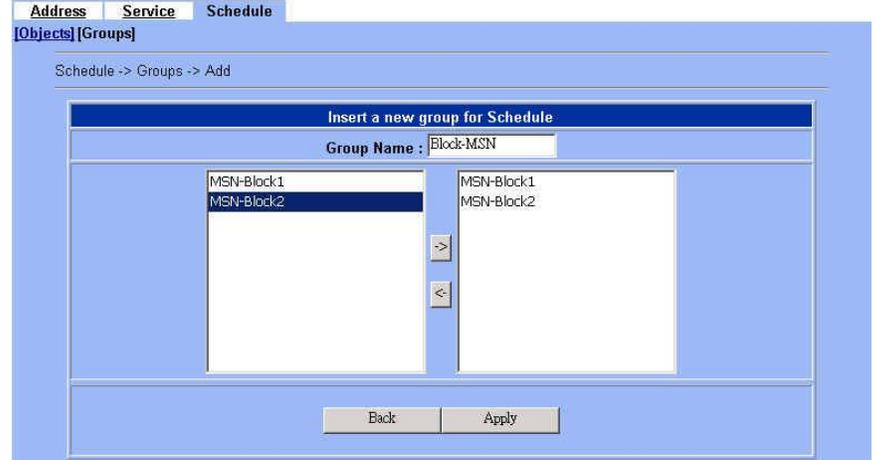
Step 3. Add a Schedule group

As Step 2 indicated, you have already created two schedule objects to block the MSN service. You can group them to make it easier to block the MSN service while you would like to make a firewall rule.

Click **Groups** hyperlink, and then click **Insert** to add a new schedule group. Enter a Group Name to identify the group. Select the schedules from the available schedules list and click right arrow to copy them to the Members list. If you would like to remove the schedules from the members list, just select the schedules and then click left arrow to remove them.

Note that group name should begin with alphabet, followed by alphabet/digits/dashes.

BASIC SETUP > Books > Schedule > Groups > Insert



9.4.4 Setup IP/MAC binding

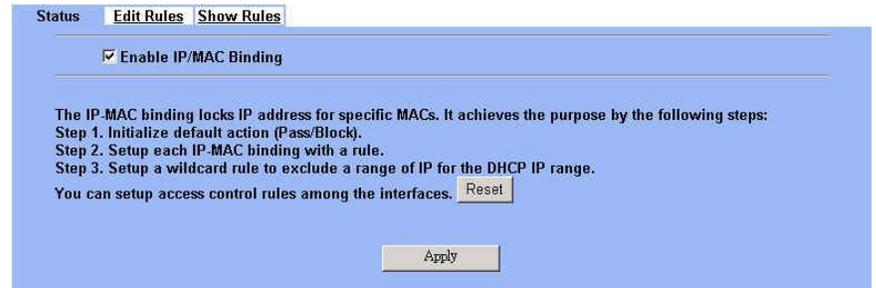
Step 1. Enable IP/MAC binding

Check the **Enable IP/MAC Binding** checkbox, and then click **Apply** to apply the setting.

Note that the IP/MAC binding locks IP address for specific MACs. It achieves the purpose by the following steps:

- Step 1. Initialize default action (Pass/Block).
- Step 2. Setup each IP/MAC binding with a rule.
- Step 3. Setup a wildcard rule to exclude a range of IP for the DHCP IP range.

Advanced Settings > IP/MAC Binding > Status

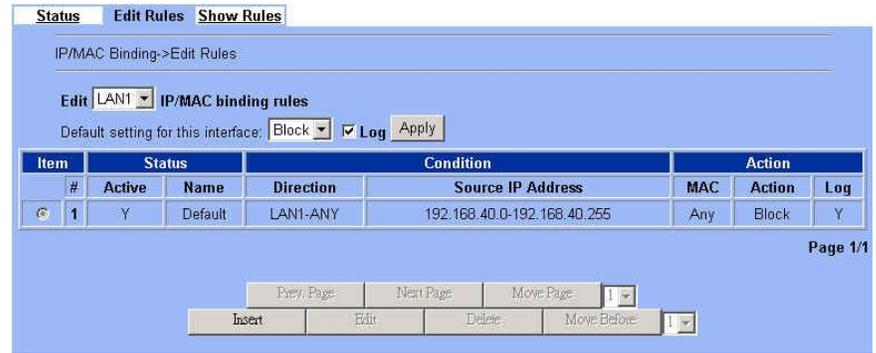


Step 2. Edit a IP/MAC binding rule

Select LAN1 as the interface to edit the IP/MAC binding rules. Suppose the default setting for this interface is **Block**, click **Insert** to add a rule.

Note that you have to add an IP/MAC binding rule as **Allow** for your computer to pass the firewall rule before you block the LAN1-ANY direction, otherwise you will be block by that rule.

Advanced Settings > IP/MAC Binding > Edit Rules



Step 3. Add a new IP/MAC binding rule

Suppose default Setting for LAN1 interface is Block, and only DHCP IP range 192.168.40.101 to 192.168.40.120 will be allowed by this rule.

Check Activate this rule checkbox. Enter Rule name as LAN1_DHCP. Select Allow Range in the Rule Type field, and enter the Start IP as 192.168.40.101 and End IP as 192.168.40.120. Click Apply to store this setting.

Note that rule name should begin with alphabet, followed by alphabet/digits/dashes.

Advanced Setting > IP/MAC binding > Edit Rules > Insert

The screenshot shows the 'Advanced Setting > IP/MAC binding > Edit Rules > Insert' page. It features a blue header with tabs for 'Status', 'Edit Rules', and 'Show Rules'. The main content area is titled 'IP/MAC Binding->Edit Rules->Insert' and contains a form for 'Insert a new LAN1-to-Any IP/MAC Binding rule'. The form includes a 'Status' section with a checked 'Activate this rule' checkbox. The 'Rule name' field contains 'LAN1_DHCP'. The 'Condition' section has a 'Rule Type' dropdown set to 'Allow Range', with 'Start IP' (192.168.40.101) and 'End IP' (192.168.40.120) input fields. The 'Action' section is set to 'Always allow any MAC.'. At the bottom, there are 'Back' and 'Apply' buttons.

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	Range / Format	EXAMPLE
Activate this rule	Activate the IP/MAC binding rule.	Enabled/Disabled	Enabled
Rule name	The name of the IP/MAC binding rule.	text string	LAN1_DHCP
Rule Type	The type of the IP/MAC binding rule is binding or IP Range..	Binding/Allow Range	Allow Range
IP/MAC	The IP/MAC address. It should be 12 characters, such as 0001029140EC.	000000000000	N/A
IP Range	The IP range of the DHCP server.	IPv4 format	192.168.40.101 ~ 192.168.40.120

Table 9-4 The field of the Schedule object

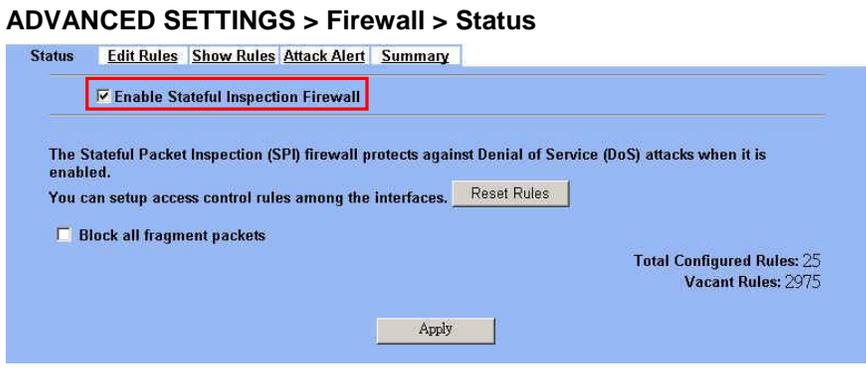
Step 4. Show the IP/MAC binding rule

After finishing the setting, you can view the result as the right diagram shown.

Advanced Setting > IP/MAC binding > Show Rules

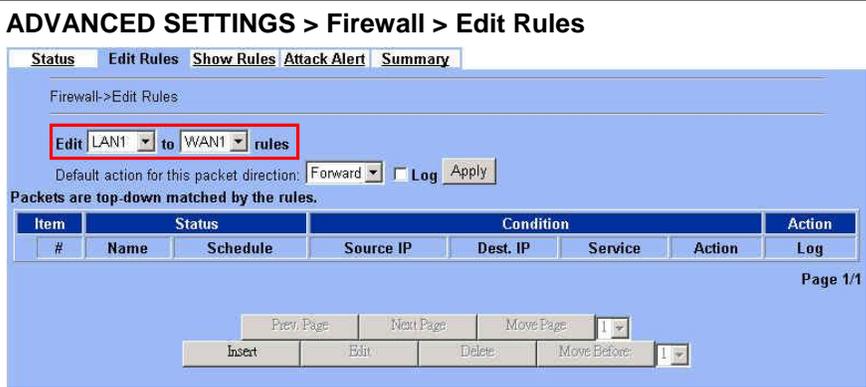
The screenshot shows the 'Advanced Setting > IP/MAC binding > Show Rules' page. It features a blue header with tabs for 'Status', 'Edit Rules', and 'Show Rules'. The main content area is titled 'IP/MAC Binding->Show Rules' and includes a dropdown menu set to 'LAN1' and the text 'IP/MAC binding rules'. Below this is a table with columns for 'Item', 'Status', 'Condition', and 'Action'. The table contains two rows: row 1 is active (Y) with name 'LAN1_DHCP', direction 'LAN1-ANY', and source IP address '192.168.40.101-192.168.40.120', with an action of 'Allow' for any MAC; row 2 is active (Y) with name 'Default', direction 'LAN1-ANY', and source IP address '192.168.40.0-192.168.40.255', with an action of 'Block' for any MAC. At the bottom, there are 'Prev. Page', 'Next Page', and 'Move Page' buttons, along with a page indicator 'Page 1/1'.

9.4.5 Block internal PC session (LAN à WAN)

<p>Step 1. Setup NAT</p> <p>Check the Enable Stateful Inspection Firewall checkbox, and click the Apply.</p>	 <p>The screenshot shows the 'ADVANCED SETTINGS > Firewall > Status' page. At the top, there are tabs for 'Status', 'Edit Rules', 'Show Rules', 'Attack Alert', and 'Summary'. The 'Status' tab is active, and the checkbox for 'Enable Stateful Inspection Firewall' is checked and highlighted with a red box. Below this, there is a text block explaining that the Stateful Packet Inspection (SPI) firewall protects against Denial of Service (DoS) attacks when enabled. There is a 'Reset Rules' button. A checkbox for 'Block all fragment packets' is currently unchecked. At the bottom right, it shows 'Total Configured Rules: 25' and 'Vacant Rules: 2975'. An 'Apply' button is at the bottom center.</p>
---	--

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	Range / Format	EXAMPLE
Enable Stateful Inspection Firewall	Enable Firewall feature of DFL-1500	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
Block all fragment packets	Enable this feature will block the fragmented packets by the firewall of DFL-1500. Warning: Enable this feature will cause problem in some applications.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
BUTTON	DESCRIPTION		
Apply	Apply the settings which have been configured.		

Table 9-5 Configure Firewall status

<p>Step 2. Add a Firewall Rule</p> <p>Select LAN1 to WAN1 traffic direction. The default action of this direction is to forward all traffic without logging anything. Click Insert to add a Firewall block rule before the default rule to stop the bad traffic.</p>	 <p>The screenshot shows the 'ADVANCED SETTINGS > Firewall > Edit Rules' page. At the top, there are tabs for 'Status', 'Edit Rules', 'Show Rules', 'Attack Alert', and 'Summary'. The 'Edit Rules' tab is active. A text field shows 'Edit LAN1 to WAN1 rules' with a red box around it. Below this, there is a 'Default action for this packet direction:' section with a 'Forward' dropdown menu and a 'Log' checkbox. An 'Apply' button is to the right. Below that, it says 'Packets are top-down matched by the rules.' There is a table with columns: Item, Status, Condition, Action. The 'Item' column has sub-columns for '#', 'Name', and 'Schedule'. The 'Condition' column has sub-columns for 'Source IP', 'Dest. IP', and 'Service'. The 'Action' column has sub-columns for 'Action' and 'Log'. At the bottom, there are navigation buttons: 'Prev. Page', 'Next Page', 'Move Page: 1', 'Insert', 'Edit', 'Delete', and 'Move Before: 1'.</p>
---	---

Step 3. Customize the rule

Before adding a new firewall, you have to set the Books in the Basic > Books > Addresses/Services/Schedules first. After configuring the settings, you can then add a new firewall rule.

Enter the rule name as PC1_1, and select Schedule. Select Source IP as PC1_1 (192.168.40.1 / 255.255.255.255), and select Dest. IP as WAN1_ALL. Select Service as ANY (TCP, UDP and ICMP). Select Block and Log to the matched session. And choose the Forward bandwidth class or Reverse bandwidth class if any. Click the Apply to apply the changes.

Note that rule name should begin with alphabet, followed by alphabet/digits/dashes.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > Firewall > Edit Rules > Insert

	FIELD	DESCRIPTION	Range / Format	EXAMPLE
Status	Activate this rule	Enable the firewall rule for later using	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
	Rule name	The name of the Firewall rule	text string	PC1_1
Condition	Source IP	Compared with the incoming packets, whether Source IP is matched or not.	IPv4 format / IPv4 format	PC1_1 (192.168.40.1 255.255.255.255)
	Dest IP	Compared with the incoming packets, whether Dest IP is matched or not.	IPv4 format / IPv4 format	WAN1_ALL (0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0)
	Service	Verified the service of incoming packet is belong to each TCP、UDP、ICMP.	ANY (TCP/UDP/ICMP)	ANY
Action	Forward / Block the matched session	If packet is matched the rule condition, Forward or Block this matched packet?	Forward / Block	Block
	do not log / log the matched session	If packet is matched the rule condition, Log or Don't log this matched packet?	log / do not log	log
	Forward bandwidth class	Forward the bandwidth class if any.	def_class	def_class
	Reverse bandwidth class	Reverse the bandwidth class if any.	def_class	def_class

Table 9-6 Insert a Firewall rule

Step 4. View the Firewall Log

You can go to DEVICE Status>Firewall Logs >Firewall Logs to view the firewall logs. If you prefer to download these logs, please click the “Download To Local” button to save the logs to localhost.

DEVICE Status > Firewall Logs > Firewall Logs

No.	Time	From	To	Protocol/(Service)	From(Interface)	To	Action	Rule
1	2004-07-14 09:58:52	192.168.17.105,399064	12.161.153.5190	TCP	LAN1(fxp3)	WAN1Block	Block	Default
2	2004-07-14 09:58:53	10.1.1.123	129.6.15.28,123	UDP	DMZ1(fxp4)	WAN1Block	Block	Default
3	2004-07-14 09:58:53	10.1.1.254	10.1.1.1	ICMP(3)	DMZ1(fxp4)	DMZ1	Block	RM:MISC
4	2004-07-14 09:58:53	192.168.17.190,139	192.168.175.1,1042	TCP	LAN1(fxp3)	WAN1Block	Block	Default
5	2004-07-14 09:58:53	192.168.17.242,1683140	113.88.155.9100	TCP	LAN1(fxp3)	WAN1Block	Block	Default
6	2004-07-14 09:58:54	10.1.1.123	210.59.157.30,123	UDP	DMZ1(fxp4)	WAN1Block	Block	Default
7	2004-07-14 09:58:54	10.1.1.254	10.1.1.1	ICMP(3)	DMZ1(fxp4)	DMZ1	Block	RM:MISC
8	2004-07-14 09:58:55	10.1.1.22	218.184.166.219,4893	TCP/(SSH)	DMZ1(fxp4)	WAN1Block	Block	Default
9	2004-07-14 09:58:55	10.1.1.254	10.1.1.1	ICMP(3)	DMZ1(fxp4)	DMZ1	Block	RM:MISC
10	2004-07-14 09:58:56	192.168.17.190,139	192.168.152.1,1041	TCP	LAN1(fxp3)	WAN1Block	Block	Default

List 10
Per Page Page: 1/14

FIELD	DESCRIPTION
No	The indicated firewall log sequence number.
Time	The record time of indicated firewall log.
From	The source IP address (include port) which the indicated log event come from.
To	The destination IP address (include port) for the indicated log event bound.
Protocol/(Service)	The record log is TCP, UDP or ICMP / (which service it will be).
Direction	The firewall log direction is OUT or IN. The direction is based on the DFL-1500. For example, “OUT” means the packet is forwarded out to the internet. “IN” means the packet is forwarded into intranet.
Action	The status of indicated firewall log is Block or Forward.
Rule	<p>The log is produced by which firewall rule.</p> <p>“Default” means the default rule of the selected firewall direction.</p> <p>“RM XXX” means the log is produced by remote management function (Almost it is the illegal user who wants to use the Non-Opened remote management functions.</p> <p>Other condition, it will be marked at the rule number (ex. Rule0, Rule1 ...).</p>

Table 9-7 Firewall log field description

9.4.6 Setup Alert detected attack

Step 1. Setup Attack Alert

With the Firewall enabled, the DFL-1500 is already equipped with an Anti-DoS engine within it. Normal DoS attacks will show up in the log when detecting and blocking such traffic. However, Flooding attacks require extra parameters to recognize. Check the `Enable Alert when attack detected` checkbox. Enter 100 in the `One Minute High` means that DFL-1500 starts to generate alerts and delete the half-open states if 100 half-open states are established in the last minute. Enter 100 in the `Maximum Incomplete High` means that DFL-1500 starts to generate alerts and delete half-open states if the current number of half-open states reaches 100. Enter 10 in the `TCP Maximum Incomplete` means that DFL-1500 starts to generate alerts and delete half-open states towards a server (SYN-Flooding attack) reaches 10. Check the `Blocking time` if you want to stop the traffic towards the server. During this blocking time, the server can digest the loading.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > Firewall > Attack Alert

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	EXAMPLE
Enable Alert when attack detected	Enable the firewall alert to detect Denial of Service (DoS) attack.	Enabled
Denial of Service Thresholds		
One Minute High	This is the rate of new half-open sessions that causes the firewall to start deleting half open sessions. When the rate of new connection attempts rises above this number, the DFL-1500 deletes half-open sessions as required to accommodate new connection attempts.	100
Maximum Incomplete High	This is the number of existing half-open sessions that causes the firewall to start deleting half-open sessions. When the number of existing half-open sessions rises above this number, the DFL-1500 deletes half-open sessions as required to accommodate new connection requests.	100
TCP Maximum Incomplete	This is the number of existing half-open TCP sessions with the same destination host IP address that causes the firewall to start dropping half-open sessions to the same destination host IP address. Enter a number between 1 and 999. As a general rule, you should choose a smaller number for a smaller network, a slower system or limited bandwidth.	10

Blocking Time	When TCP Maximum Incomplete is reached you can choose if the next session should be allowed or blocked. If you check Blocking Time any new sessions will be blocked for the length of time you specified in the next field (min) and all old incomplete sessions will be cleared during this period. If you want strong security, it is better to block the traffic for a short time, as will give the server some time to digest the loading.	disabled
(min)	Enter the length of Blocking Time in minutes.	0

Table 9-8 Setup the Denial of Service Thresholds of attack alert

Part IV

Virtual Private Network

Chapter 10

VPN Technical Introduction

This chapter introduces VPN related technology

10.1 VPN benefit

If you choose to implement VPN technology in your enterprise, then it may bring the following benefits to your company.

1. Authentication

Ensure the data received is the same as the data that was sent and that the claimed sender is in fact the actual sender.

2. Integrity

Ensure that data is transmitted from source to destination without undetected alteration.

3. Confidentiality

Guarantee the intended recipients know what was being sent but unintended parties cannot determine what was sent. This is almost provided by data encryption.

4. Non-repudiation

The receiver being able to prove that the sender of some data did in fact send the data even though the sender might later desire to deny ever having sent that data.

10.2 Related Terminology Explanation

10.2.1 VPN

A VPN (Virtual Private Network) logically provides secure communications between sites without the expense of leased site-to-site lines. A secure VPN is a combination of encryption, tunneling, authentication, and access control used to transport traffic over the Internet or any insecure TCP/IP networks.

10.2.2 IPsec

Internet Protocol Security (IPsec) is a standard-based VPN that offers flexible solutions for secure data communications across a public network like the Internet. IPsec is built around a number of standardized cryptographic techniques to provide confidentiality, data integrity and authentication at the IP layer.

10.2.3 Security Association

A Security Association (SA) is an agreement between two parties indicating what security parameters, such as keys and algorithms they will use.

10.2.4 IPsec Algorithms

There are two types of the algorithms in the IPsec, including (1) Encryption Algorithms such as DES (Data Encryption Standard), and 3DES (Triple DES) algorithms, and (2) Authentication Algorithms such as HMAC-MD5 (RFC 2403), and HMAC-SHA1 (RFC 2404).

10.2.5 Key Management

Key Management allows you to determine whether to use IKE (ISAKMP) or manual key configuration in order to setup a VPN.

Ø IKE Phases

There are two phases to every IKE (Internet Key Exchange) negotiation – phase 1 (Authentication) and phase 2 (Key Exchange). A phase 1 exchange established an IKE SA and the second one uses that SA to negotiate SAa for IPSec.

In phase 1 you must :

- n Choose a negotiation mode
- n Authenticate the connection by entering a pre-shared key
- n Choose an encryption algorithm
- n Choose an authentication algorithm
- n Choose a Diffie-Hellman public-key cryptography key group (DH1 or DH2).
- n Set the IKE SA lifetime. This field allows you to determine how long IKE SA negotiation should proceed before it times out. A value of 0 means IKE SA negotiation never times out. If IKE SA negotiation times out, then both IKE SA and IPSec SA must be renegotiated.

In phase 2 you must :

- n Choose which protocol to use (ESP or AH) for the IKE key exchange
- n Choose an encryption algorithm
- n Choose an authentication algorithm
- n Choose whether to enable Perfect Forward Security (PFS) using Diffie-Hellman public-key cryptography
- n Choose Tunnel mode or Transport mode
- n Set the IPSec SA lifetime. This field allows you to determine how long IPSec SA setup should proceed before it times out. A value of 0 means IPSec SA never times out. If IPSec SA negotiation times out, then the IPSec SA must be renegotiated (but not the IKE SA).

Ø Negotiation Mode

The phase 1 Negotiation Mode you select determines how the Security Association (SA) will be established for each connection through IKE negotiations.

- n Main Mode ensures the highest level of security when the communicating parties are negotiating authentication (phase 1). It uses 6 messages in three round trips (SA negotiation, Diffie-Hellman exchange and an exchange of nonces (a nonce is a random number)). This mode features identity protection (your identity is not revealed in the negotiation).
- n Aggressive Mode is quicker than Main Mode because it eliminates several steps when the communicating parties are negotiating authentication (phase 1). However the trade-off is that fast speed limits its negotiating power and it also does not provide identity protection. It is useful in remote access situation where the address of the initiator is not known by the responder and both parties want to use pre-shared key authentication.

Ø Pre-Shared Key

A pre-shared key identifies a communicating party during a phase 1 IKE negotiation. It is called “pre-shared” because you have to share it with another party before you can communicate with them over a secure connection.

Ø Diffie-Hellman (DH) Key Groups

Diffie-Hellman (DH) is a public-key cryptography protocol that allows two parties to establish a shared secret over an unsecured communications channel. Diffie-Hellman is used within IKE SA setup to establish session keys. 768-bit (Group 1 – DH1) and 1024-bit (Group 2 – DH2) Diffie-Hellman groups are supported. Upon completion of the Diffie-Hellman exchange, the two peers have a shared secret, but the IKE SA is not authenticated. For authentication, use pre-shared keys.

Ø Perfect Forward Secrecy (PFS)

Enabling PFS means that the key is transient. The key is thrown away and replaced by a brand new key using a new Diffie-Hellman exchange for each new IPSec SA setup. With PFS enabled, if one key is compromised, previous and subsequent keys are not compromised, because subsequent keys are not derived from previous keys. The (time-consuming) Diffie-Hellman exchange is the trade-off for this extra security.

This may be unnecessary for data that does not require such security, so PFS is disabled (None) by default in the DFL-1500. Disabling PFS means new authentication and encryption keys are derived from the same root secret (which may have security implications in the long run) but allows faster SA setup (by bypassing the Diffie-Hellman key exchange).

10.2.6 Encapsulation

Ø Transport Mode

Transport mode is used to protect upper layer protocols and only affects the data in the IP packets. In Transport mode, the IP packets contains the security protocol (AH or ESP) located after the original IP header and options, but before any upper layer protocols contains in the packet (such as TCP and UDP).

With ESP, protection is applied only to the upper layer protocols contained in the packet. The IP header information and options are not used in the authentication process. Therefore, the originating IP address cannot be verified for integrity against the data.

With the use of AH as the security protocol, protection is extended forward into the IP header to verify the integrity of the entire packet by use of portions of the original IP header in the hashing process.

Ø Tunnel Mode

Tunnel mode encapsulates the entire IP packet to transmit it securely. A Tunnel mode is required for gateway services to provide access to internal system. Tunnel mode is fundamentally an IP tunnel with authentication and encryption. This is the most common mode of operation. Tunnel mode is required for gateway to gateway and host to gateway communications. Tunnel mode communication have two sets of IP headers :

- n Outside header : The outside IP header contains the destination IP address of the VPN gateway.
- n Inside header : The inside IP header contains the destination IP address of the final system behind the VPN gateway. The security protocol appears after the outer IP header and before the inside IP header.

10.2.7 IPSec Protocols

The ESP and AH protocols are necessary to create a Security Association (SA), the foundation of an IPSec VPN. An SA is built from the authentication provided by AH and ESP protocols. The primary function of key management is to establish and maintain the SA between systems. Once the SA is established, the transport of data may commence.

Ø AH (Authentication Header) Protocol

AH protocol (RFC 2402) was designed for integrity, authentication, sequence integrity (replay resistance), and non-repudiation but not for confidentiality, for which the ESP was designed.

In applications where confidentiality is not required or not sanctioned by government encryption restrictions, an AH can be employed to ensure integrity. This type of implementation does not protect the information from dissemination but will allow for verification of the integrity of the information and authentication of the originator.

Ø ESP (Encapsulating Security Payload) Protocol

The ESP protocol (RFC 2406) provides encryption as well as some of the services offered by AH. ESP authenticating properties are limited compared to the AH due to the non-inclusion of the IP header information during the authentication process. However, ESP is sufficient if only the upper layer protocols need to be authenticated.

An added feature of the ESP is payload padding, which further protects communications by concealing the size of the packet being transmitted.

10.3 Make VPN packets pass through DFL-1500

Step 1. Enable IPSec

If we need to setup DFL-1500 between the existed IPSec / PPTP / L2TP connections. We need to open up the Firewall blocking port of DFL-1500 in advance. Here we provide a simple way. You can through enable the IPSec / PPTP / L2TP pass through checkbox on this page. Then the VPN connections of IPSec / PPTP / L2TP will pass through DFL-1500. As well as DFL-1500 will play the middle forwarding device role.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > VPN Settings > Pass Through

The screenshot shows the 'Pass Through' configuration page. At the top, there are tabs for 'IPSec', 'VPN Hub', 'VPN Spoke', 'PPTP', 'L2TP', and 'Pass Through'. The 'Pass Through' tab is selected. Below the tabs, there are three checkboxes, all of which are checked and highlighted with a red box:

- Enable IPSec pass through
- Enable PPTP pass through
- Enable L2TP pass through

Below the checkboxes, there is a text box explaining the function of the pass-through feature:

IPSec/PPTP/L2TP pass through make the DFL-1500 device as a middle forwarding device between:

1. Two IPSec devices.
2. Two PPTP devices.
3. Two L2TP devices.

At the bottom of the page, there is an 'Apply' button.

Chapter 11

Virtual Private Network – IPsec

This chapter introduces IPsec VPN and explains how to implement it.

As described in the Figure 2-1, we will extend to explain how to make a VPN link between LAN_1 and LAN_2 in this chapter. The following Figure 11-1 is the real structure in our implemented process.

11.1 Demands

1. When a branch office subnet LAN_1 wants to connect with another branch office subnet LAN_2 through the public Internet instead of the expensive private leased lines, VPN can provide encryption and authentication to secure the tunnel that connects these two LANs.

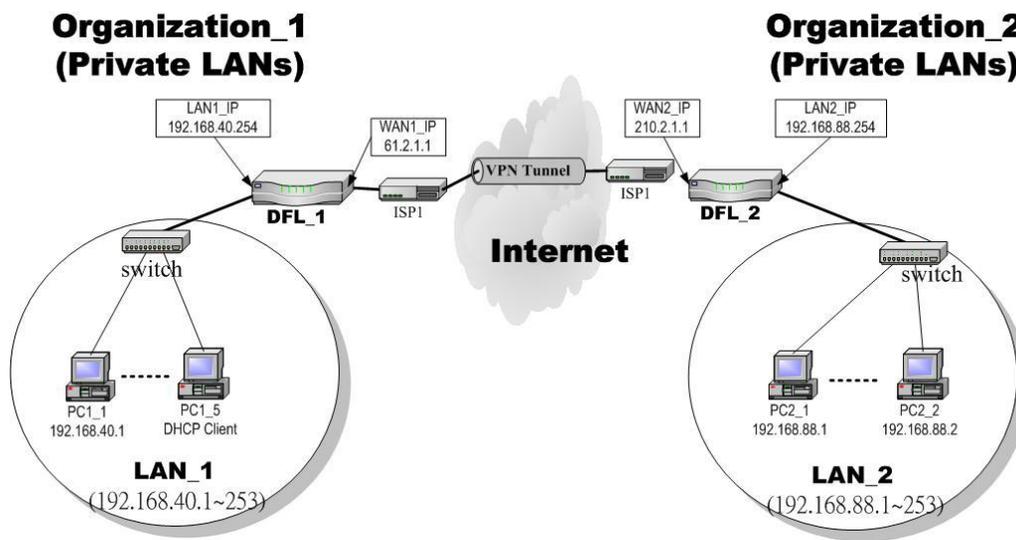


Figure 11-1 Organization_1 LAN_1 is making VPN tunnel with Organization_2 LAN_2

11.2 Objectives

1. Let the users in LAN_1 and LAN_2 share the resources through a secure channel established using the public Internet.

11.3 Methods

1. Separately configure DFL-1 and DFL-2 which are the edge gateways of LAN_1 and LAN_2 respectively. You have to determine a key management method between IKE (Internet Key Exchange) and Manual Key. The following table compares the settings between IKE and Manual Key. In the following, we will describe them separately.

	IKE	Manual Key
Same	“Local Address” means the local LAN subnet; “Remote Address” means the remote LAN subnet; “My IP Address” means the WAN IP address of the local VPN gateway while the “Peer’s IP Address” means the WAN IP address of the other VPN gateway.	

Difference	The “Pre-Shared Key” must be the same at both DFL-1500s.	The types and keys of “Encryption” and “Authenticate” must be set the same on both DFL-1500s. However, the “Outgoing SPI” at DFL-1 must equal to “Incoming SPI” at DFL-2, and the “Outgoing SPI” at DFL-2 must equal to “Incoming SPI” at DFL-1.
------------	--	--

Table 11-1 Compared IKE and Manual Key methods

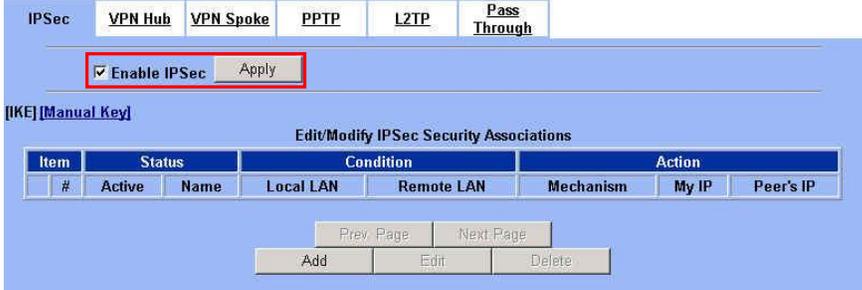
11.4 Steps

In the following we will separately explain the ways to set up a secure DES/MD5 tunnel with IKE and Manual key.

Ø DES/MD5 IPsec tunnel: the IKE way

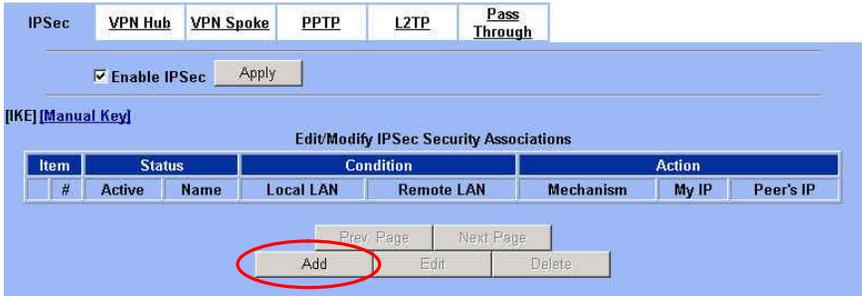
At DFL-1:

At the first, we will install the IPsec properties of DFL-1.

<p>Step 1. Enable IPsec</p> <p>Check the Enable IPsec checkbox and click Apply.</p>	<p>ADVANCED SETTINGS > VPN Settings > IPsec</p> 
--	--

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	EXAMPLE
Enable IPsec	Enable IPsec feature of DFL-1500	Enabled
BUTTON	DESCRIPTION	
Apply	Apply the settings which have been configured.	

Table 11-2 Enable the IPsec feature

<p>Step 2. Add an IKE rule</p> <p>Click the IKE hyperlink and click Add to add a new IPsec VPN tunnel endpoint.</p>	<p>ADVANCED SETTINGS > VPN Settings > IPsec > IKE</p> 
--	--

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	EXAMPLE
IKE	Use the IKE (Internet Key Exchange) method to negotiate the key used in building IPsec tunnel.	Selected
Manual Key	Use the key which you have been designated to build IPsec tunnel in peer VPN device.	Non selected
BUTTON	DESCRIPTION	
Prev. Page	If there are more than one action pages, you can press Prev. Page to back to the previous page.	
Next Page	If there are more than one action pages, you can press Next Page to go to the next page.	
Add	Insert a new IPsec rule.	
Edit	Edit the properties of the indicated IPsec rule.	
Delete	Delete the indicated IPsec rule.	

Table 11-3 Add an IPsec policy rule

Step 3. Customize the rule

Check the Active checkbox. Enter a name for this rule like IKerule. Enter the Local IP Address (192.168.40.0/255.255.255.0) and the Remote IP Address (192.168.88.0/255.255.255.0). Select the Outgoing Interface of this VPN/Firewall Router. Enter the public IP of the opposite-side VPN gateway (210.2.1.1) in the Peer's IP Address. Click the ESP Algorithm and select Encrypt and Authenticate (DES, MD5). Enter the Pre-Shared Key as 1234567890. Click the Apply button to store the settings. Note, In the Action region. It should choose either ESP Algorithm or AH Algorithm, or system will show error message. If you hope to set the detailed item of IKE parameter. Click the Advanced button in this page. Otherwise it is ok to just leave the value default.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > VPN Settings > IPsec > IKE > Add

Self local IP Address
The opposite side IP Address

	FIELD	DESCRIPTION	Range / Format	EXAMPLE
Status	Active	This field will activate this IPsec policy rule	Enable/Disable	Enabled
	IKE Rule Name	The name of this IPsec policy	text string	IKerule

Part IV
Virtual Private Network

Condition	Local Address Type	Determine the method to connect to the remote side of VPN by using the local subnet or the local single host.	Subnet Address / Single Address	Subnet Address
	IP Address	The local IP address	IPv4 format	192.168.40.0
	Prefix Len/Subnet Mask	The local IP Netmask	IPv4 format	255.255.255.0
	Remote Address Type	Determine the method to connect to the local side of VPN by using the remote subnet or the remote single host.	Subnet Address / Single Address	Subnet Address
	IP Address	The remote IP address	IPv4 format	192.168.88.0
	Prefix Len/Subnet Mask	The remote IP Netmask	IPv4 format	255.255.255.0
Action	Negotiation Mode	Choose Main or Aggressive mode, see Chapter 10 for details.	Main / Aggressive	Main
	Encapsulation Mode	Choose Tunnel or Transport mode, see Chapter 10 for details.	Tunnel / Transport	Tunnel
	Outgoing Interface	The WAN interface you are going to build IPsec tunnel with.	WAN interfaces	WAN1
	Peer's IP Address	The IP address of remote VPN device. The IP address may be fixed (Static) or dynamic.	Static IP / Dynamic IP	Static IP 210.2.1.1
	My Identifier	Fill your information in this field. The filled information will be provided for the IPsec tunnel establishment.	IP Address / FQDN (domain name) / User FQDN (mail box)	IP Address
	Peer's Identifier	Fill the information of peer VPN device in this field. The filled information will be provided for the IPsec tunnel establishment.	IP Address / FQDN (domain name) / User FQDN (mail box)	IP Address

	ESP Algorithm	<p>ESP Algorithm may be grouped by the items of the Encryption and Authentication Algorithms or execute separately.</p> <p>We can select below items, the Encryption and Authentication Algorithm combination or the below item Authentication Algorithm singly.</p> <p>Here Encryption Algorithms include DES(64 bits), 3DES(192 bits) and AES(128/192/256 bits) Authentication Algorithms include MD5(128 bits) and SHA1(160 bits)</p>	<p>Encrypt and Authenticate (DES, MD5) / Encrypt and Authenticate (DES, SHA1) / Encrypt and Authenticate (3DES, MD5) / Encrypt and Authenticate (3DES, SHA1) / Encrypt and Authenticate (AES, MD5) / Encrypt and Authenticate (AES, SHA1) / Encrypt only (DES) / Encrypt only (3DES) / Encrypt only (AES) / Authenticate only (MD5) / Authenticate only (SHA1)</p>	Encrypt and Authenticate (DES, MD5)
	AH Algorithm	Select Authentication Algorithm	<p>Authenticate (MD5) / Authenticate (SHA1)</p>	Disabled
	Pre-Shared Key	The key which is pre-shared with remote side.	text string	1234567890

Table 11-4 Related field explanation of adding an IPsec policy rule

Step 4. Detail settings of IPSec IKE

In this page, we will set the detailed value of IKE parameter. Fill in the related field as Table 11-5 indicated to finish these settings.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > VPN Settings > IPSec > IKE > Add > Advanced

The screenshot shows the 'Advanced' settings for an IPSec IKE rule. At the top, there are tabs for 'IPSec', 'VPN Hub', 'VPN Spoke', 'PPTP', 'L2TP', and 'Pass Through'. Below these is a breadcrumb trail: 'IPSec->IKE->Edit Rule->Advanced'. The settings are organized into sections: 'Condition' (Transport Layer Protocol: ANY), 'Action' (Enable Replay Detection: NO), 'Phase 1' (Negotiation Mode: Main, Pre-Shared Key: 1234567890, Encryption Algorithm: Encrypt and Authenticate (DES, MD5), SA Life Time: 28800, Key Group: DH2), and 'Phase 2' (Encapsulation: Tunnel, Active Protocol: ESP, Encryption Algorithm: Encrypt and Authenticate (DES, MD5), SA Life Time: 28800, Perfect Forward Secrecy: DH1). 'Back' and 'Apply' buttons are at the bottom.

	FIELD	DESCRIPTION	Range / Format	EXAMPLE
Condition	Transport Layer Protocol	Utilize this field to select some packets which are specified protocol (ANY, TCP, UDP). If the packets are not the specified protocol will not be allowed to pass through IPSec tunnels.	ANY / TCP / UDP	TCP
	Enable Replay Detection	Whether is the "Replay Detection" enabled?	NO / YES	NO
Action	Phase1			
	Negotiation Mode	View only, it is set previously and can not be edited again.	Can not be edited	Main
	Pre-Shared Key	View only, it is set previously and can not be edited again.	Can not be edited	1234567890
	Encryption Algorithm	Choose a type of encryption and authentication algorithm combination.	Encrypt and Authenticate (DES, MD5) / Encrypt and Authenticate (DES, SHA1) / Encrypt and Authenticate (3DES, MD5) / Encrypt and Authenticate (3DES, SHA1)	Encrypt and Authenticate (DES、MD5)
	SA Life Time	Set the IKE SA lifetime. A value of 0 means IKE SA negotiation never times out. See Chapter 10 for details.	0 ~ 9999999999 sec/min/hour	28800 sec

Key Group	Choose a Diffie-Hellman public-key cryptography key group	DH1 / DH2 / DH5	DH2
Phase2			
Encapsulation	View only, it is set previously and can not be edited again.	Can not be edited	Tunnel
Active Protocol	View only, it is set previously and can not be edited again.	Can not be edited	ESP
Encryption Algorithm	Choose a type of encryption and authentication algorithm combination or singly.	Encrypt and Authenticate (DES, MD5) / Encrypt and Authenticate (DES, SHA1) / Encrypt and Authenticate (3DES, MD5) / Encrypt and Authenticate (3DES, SHA1) / Encrypt and Authenticate (AES, MD5) / Encrypt and Authenticate (AES, SHA1) / Encrypt only (DES) / Encrypt only (3DES) / Encrypt only (AES) / Authenticate only (MD5) / Authenticate only (SHA1)	Encrypt and Authenticate (DES · MD5)
SA Life Time	Set the IPsec SA lifetime. A value of 0 means IKE SA negotiation never times out. See Chapter 10 for details.	0 ~ 9999999999 sec/min/hour	28800 sec
Perfect Forward Secrecy(PFS)	Enabling PFS means that the key is transient. This extra setting will cause more security.	None / DH1 / DH2 / DH5	DH1

Table 11-5 Setup Advanced feature in the IPsec IKE rule

Step 5. Remind to add a Firewall rule

After finishing IPsec rule settings, we need to add a firewall rule. Here system shows a window message to remind you of adding a firewall rule. Just press the OK button to add a firewall rule.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > VPN Settings > IPsec > IKE > Add

IPsec **VPN Hub** VPN Spoke PPTP L2TP **Pass Through**

1. If you enable the firewall, please check whether these firewall rules would block packets in tunnel.
2. Packets are blocked by default in the "WAN to LAN" direction, please add a rule to forward these tunneled packets.
3. The source address/mask and the destination address/mask of the firewall rules are 192.168.88.0/255.255.255.0 and 192.168.40.0/255.255.255.0 respectively.

OK

Step 6. Add a Firewall rule

Beforehand, please make sure that the Firewall is enabled. Select WAN1-to-LAN1 to display the rules of this direction. The default action of this direction is Block with Logs. We have to allow the VPN traffic from the WAN1 side to enter our LAN1 side. So we click the Insert button to add a Firewall rule before the default rule.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > Firewall > Edit Rules

Firewall->Edit Rules

Default action for this packet direction: Block Log Apply

Packets are top-down matched by the rules.

Item #	Name	Schedule	Source IP	Dest. IP	Service	Action	Log

Page 1/1

Step 7. Customize the Firewall rule

Enter the Rule Name as AllowVPN, Source IP as WAN1_VPNA (192.168.88.0), and Dest. IP as LAN1_VPNA (192.168.40.0). Click Apply to store this rule.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > Firewall > Edit Rules > Insert

Firewall->Edit Rules->Insert

Insert a new WAN1-to-LAN1 Firewall rule

Status

Rule name: AllowVPN

Schedule: Always

Condition

Source IP: WAN1_VPNA Dest. IP: LAN1_VPNA

Service: ANY

Action

Forward and do not log the matched session.

Forward bandwidth class: def_class

Reverse bandwidth class: def_class

Back Apply

Step 8. View the result

Here we have a new rule before the default firewall rule. This rule will allow packets from 192.168.88.0 / 255.255.255.0 pass through DFL-1500. And accomplish the VPN tunnel establishment.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > Firewall > Edit Rules

Firewall->Show Rules

Show WAN1 to LAN1 rules

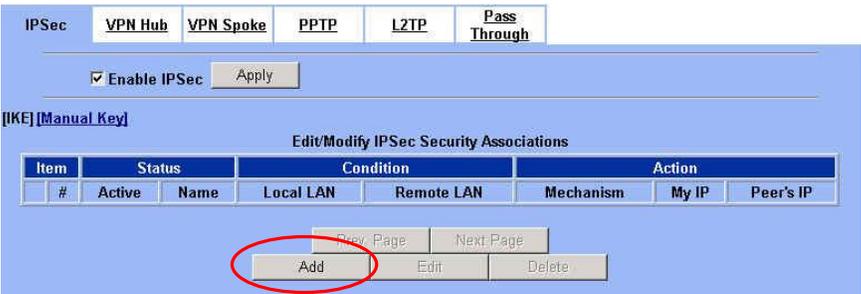
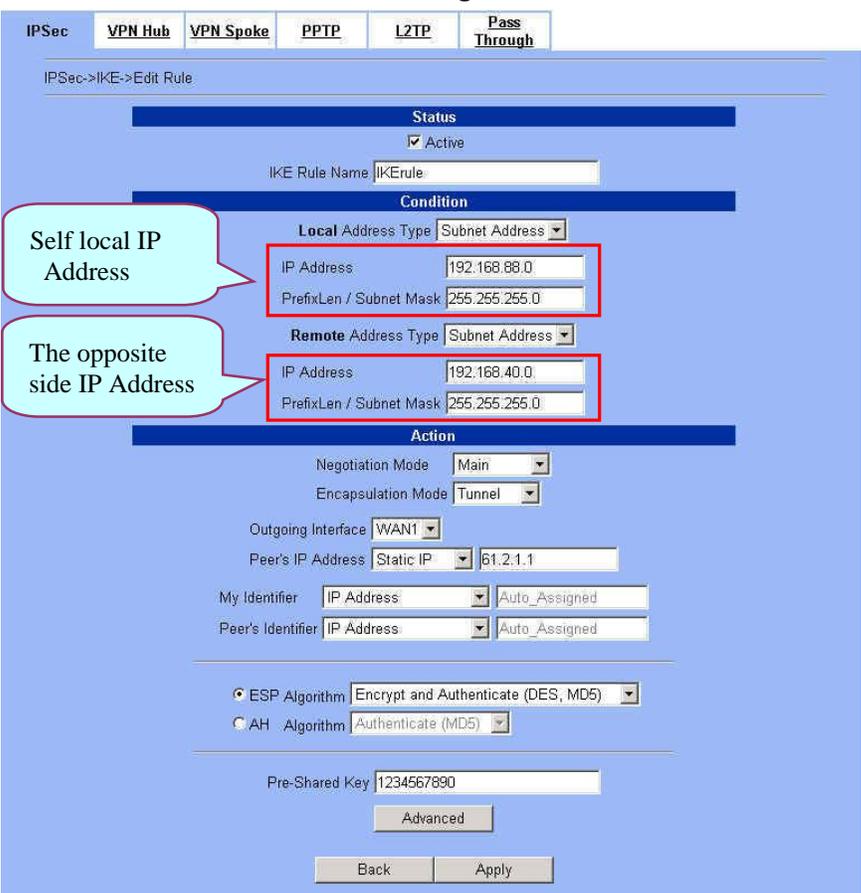
Packets are top-down matched by the rules.

Item #	Name	Schedule	Source IP	Dest. IP	Service	Action	Log
1	AllowVPN	ALWAYS	WAN1_VPNA	LAN1_VPNA	ANY	Forward	N

Page 1/1

At DFL-2:

Here we will install the IPSec properties of DFL-2. Note that the “Local Address” and “Remote address” field are opposite to the DFL-1, and so are “My IP Address” and “Peer’s IP Address” field.

<p>Step 1. Enable IPsec Check the <code>Enable IPsec</code> checkbox and click <code>Apply</code>.</p>	<p>ADVANCED SETTINGS > VPN Settings > IPsec</p> 
<p>Step 2. Add an IKE rule Click the <code>IKE</code> hyperlink and click <code>Add</code> to add a new IPsec VPN tunnel endpoint.</p>	<p>ADVANCED SETTINGS > VPN Settings > IPsec > IKE</p> 
<p>Step 3. Customize the rule Check the <code>Active</code> checkbox. Enter a name for this rule like <code>IKerule</code>. Enter the <code>Local IP Address</code> (192.168.88.0/255.255.255.0) and the <code>Remote IP Address</code> (192.168.40.0/255.255.255.0). Select the <code>Outgoing interface</code> of this VPN/Firewall Router. Enter the public IP of the opposite-side VPN gateway (61.2.1.1) in the <code>Peer's IP Address</code>. Click the <code>ESP Algorithm</code> and select <code>Encrypt and Authenticate (DES, MD5)</code>. Enter the <code>Pre-Shared Key</code> as 1234567890. Click the <code>Apply</code> button to store the settings. Note, in the <code>Action</code> region, you should choose either <code>ESP Algorithm</code> or <code>AH Algorithm</code>, or system will show error message.</p>	<p>ADVANCED SETTINGS > VPN Settings > IPsec > IKE > Add</p>  <p>Self local IP Address</p> <p>The opposite side IP Address</p>

Step 4. Remind to add a Firewall rule

After finishing IPSec rule settings, we need to add a firewall rule. Here system shows a window message to remind you of adding a firewall rule. Just press the OK button to add a firewall rule.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > VPN Settings > IPSec > IKE > Add

IPSec **VPN Hub** VPN Spoke PPTP L2TP **Pass Through**

1. If you enable the firewall, please check whether these firewall rules would block packets in tunnel.
2. Packets are blocked by default in the "WAN to LAN" direction, please add a rule to forward these tunneled packets.
3. The source address/mask and the destination address/mask of the firewall rules are 192.168.40.0/255.255.255.0 and 192.168.88.0/255.255.255.0 respectively.

OK

Step 5. Add a Firewall rule

Same as at DFL-1. We need to add an extra firewall rule to allow IPSec packets to come from internet. So here we select WAN1-to-LAN1 direction, and click Insert button.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > Firewall > Edit Rules

Status **Edit Rules** Show Rules Attack Alert Summary

Firewall->Edit Rules

Edit WAN1 to LAN1 rules

Default action for this packet direction: Block Log Apply

Packets are top-down matched by the rules.

Item #	Name	Schedule	Source IP	Dest. IP	Service	Action	Log

Page 1/1

Prev. Page Next Page Move Page: 1

Insert Edit Delete Move Before: 1

Step 6. Customize the Firewall rule

Enter the Rule Name as AllowVPN, Source IP as WAN1_VPNB (192.168.40.0), and Dest. IP as LAN1_VPNB (192.168.88.0). Click Apply to store this rule.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > Firewall > Edit Rules > Insert

Status **Edit Rules** Show Rules Attack Alert Summary

Firewall->Edit Rules->Edit

Edit WAN1-to-LAN1 Firewall rule number 1

Status

Rule name: AllowVPN

Schedule: Always

Condition

Source IP: WAN1_VPNB Dest. IP: LAN1_VPNB

Service: ANY

Action

Forward and do not log the matched session.

Forward bandwidth class: def_class

Reverse bandwidth class: def_class

Back Apply

Step 7. View the result

Now we have inserted a new rule before the default firewall rule. Any packets from 192.168.40.0/24 to 192.168.88.0/24 will be allowed to pass through the DFL-1500 and successfully access the 192.168.88.0/24 through the VPN tunnel.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > Firewall > Edit Rules

Status **Edit Rules** Show Rules Attack Alert Summary

Firewall->Show Rules

Show WAN1 to LAN1 rules

Packets are top-down matched by the rules.

Item #	Name	Schedule	Source IP	Dest. IP	Service	Action	Log
1	AllowVPN	ALWAYS	WAN1_VPNB	LAN1_VPNB	ANY	Forward	N

Page 1/1

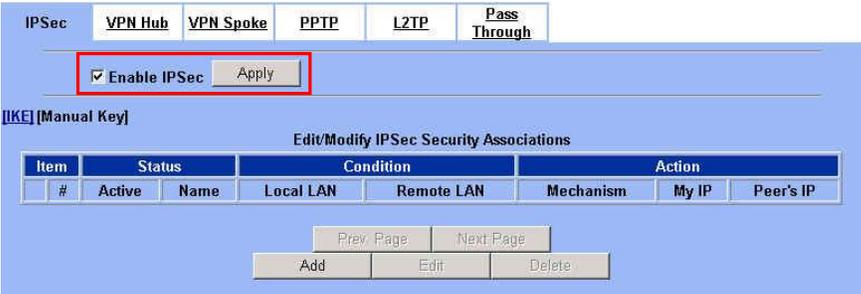
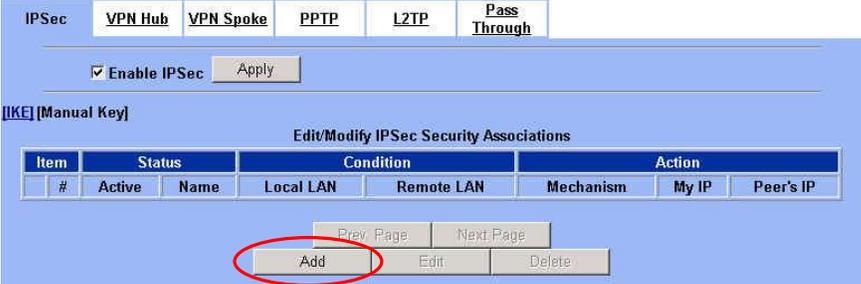
Prev. Page Next Page Move Page: 1

Ø DES/MD5 IPsec tunnel: the Manual-Key way

In the previous section, we have introduced IKE method. Here we will introduce another method using Manual-Key way instead of IKE to install DFL-1.

At DFL-1:

At the first, we will use the Manual-Key way to install the IPsec properties of DFL-1.

<p>Step 1. Enable IPsec</p> <p>Check the <code>Enable IPsec</code> checkbox and click <code>Apply</code>.</p>	<p>ADVANCED SETTINGS > VPN Settings > IPsec</p>  <p>The screenshot shows the 'IPsec' configuration page. At the top, there are tabs for 'VPN Hub', 'VPN Spoke', 'PPTP', 'L2TP', and 'Pass Through'. Below these, the 'Enable IPsec' checkbox is checked, and the 'Apply' button is highlighted with a red box. Underneath, there is a section for '(IKE) [Manual Key]' with a table titled 'Edit/Modify IPsec Security Associations'.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Item</th> <th>Status</th> <th colspan="2">Condition</th> <th>Action</th> </tr> <tr> <th>#</th> <th>Active</th> <th>Name</th> <th>Local LAN</th> <th>Remote LAN</th> <th>Mechanism</th> <th>My IP</th> <th>Peer's IP</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td colspan="8" style="text-align: center;"> Prev. Page Next Page Add Edit Delete </td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Item	Status	Condition		Action	#	Active	Name	Local LAN	Remote LAN	Mechanism	My IP	Peer's IP	Prev. Page Next Page Add Edit Delete							
Item	Status	Condition		Action																		
#	Active	Name	Local LAN	Remote LAN	Mechanism	My IP	Peer's IP															
Prev. Page Next Page Add Edit Delete																						
<p>Step 2. Add a Manual Key rule</p> <p>Click the <code>Manual Key</code> hyperlink and click <code>Add</code> to add a new IPsec VPN tunnel endpoint.</p>	<p>ADVANCED SETTINGS > VPN Settings > IPsec > Manual Key</p>  <p>The screenshot shows the 'Manual Key' configuration page. It has the same top navigation as the previous screenshot. The 'Enable IPsec' checkbox is checked. Below the table, the 'Add' button is highlighted with a red circle.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Item</th> <th>Status</th> <th colspan="2">Condition</th> <th>Action</th> </tr> <tr> <th>#</th> <th>Active</th> <th>Name</th> <th>Local LAN</th> <th>Remote LAN</th> <th>Mechanism</th> <th>My IP</th> <th>Peer's IP</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td colspan="8" style="text-align: center;"> Prev. Page Next Page Add Edit Delete </td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Item	Status	Condition		Action	#	Active	Name	Local LAN	Remote LAN	Mechanism	My IP	Peer's IP	Prev. Page Next Page Add Edit Delete							
Item	Status	Condition		Action																		
#	Active	Name	Local LAN	Remote LAN	Mechanism	My IP	Peer's IP															
Prev. Page Next Page Add Edit Delete																						

Step 3. Customize the rule

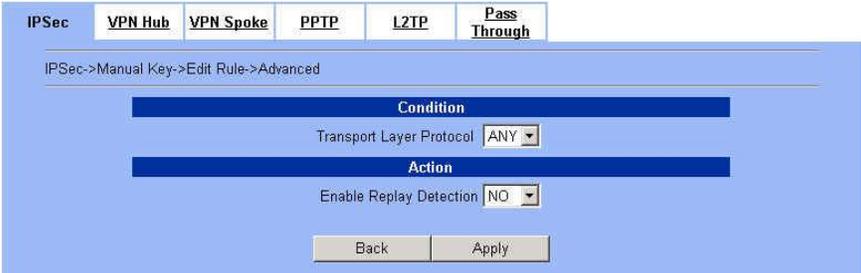
Same as those in IKE. But there is no pre-shared key in the manual-key mode. Enter the Key for encryption, such as 1122334455667788. Enter the Key for authentication, such as 11112222333344445555666677778888. Additionally, the Outgoing SPI and Incoming SPI have to be manually specified. Enter 2222 and 1111 respectively to the Outgoing SPI and the Incoming SPI. Click Apply to store the rule.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > VPN Settings > IPsec > Manual Key > Add

	FIELD	DESCRIPTION	Range / Format	EXAMPLE
Status	Active	This field will activate this IPsec policy rule	Enable / Disable	Enabled
	Manual Key Rule Name	The name of this IPsec policy	text string	ManualKeyrule
Condition	Local Address Type	Determine the method to connect to the remote side of VPN by using the local subnet or the local single host.	Subnet Address / Single Address	Subnet Address
	IP Address	The local IP address	IPv4 format	192.168.40.0
	PrefixLen / Subnet Mask	The local IP Netmask	IPv4 format	255.255.255.0
	Remote Address Type	Determine the method to connect to the local side of VPN by using the remote subnet or the remote single host.	Subnet Address / Single Address	Subnet Address
	IP Address	The remote IP address	IPv4 format	192.168.88.0
	PrefixLen / Subnet Mask	The remote IP Netmask	IPv4 format	255.255.255.0

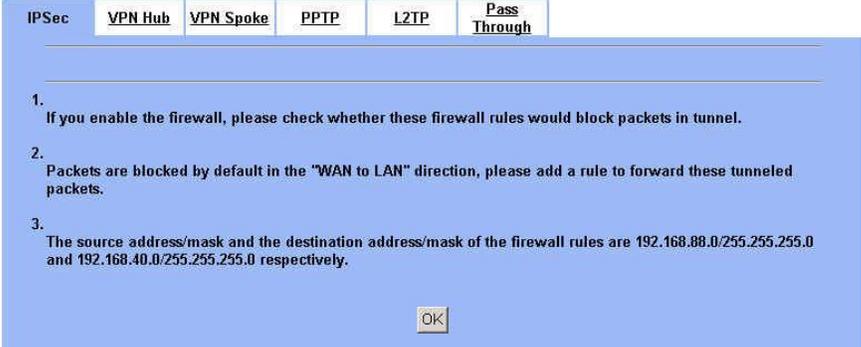
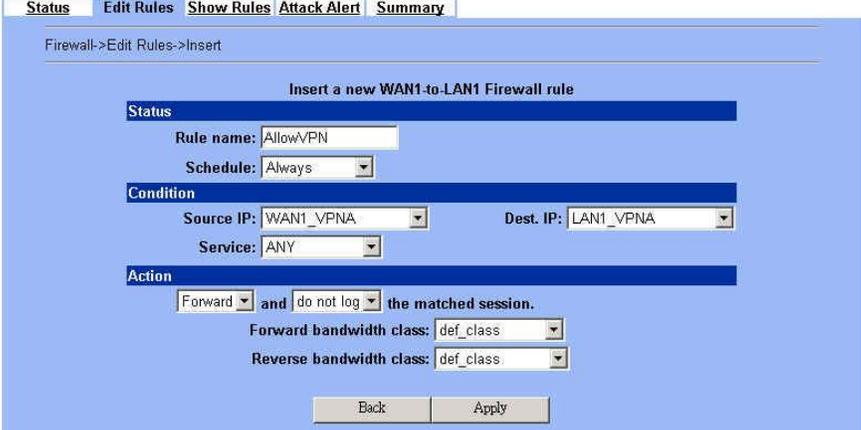
Action	Outgoing Interface	The WAN interface you are going to build IPsec tunnel with.	WAN interfaces	WAN1
	Peer's IP Address	The IP address of remote site device, like DFL-1500 VPN/Firewall Router.	IPv4 format	210.2.1.1
	Outgoing SPI	The Outgoing SPI (Security Parameter Index) value.	hex(600 ~ 600000) / dec(1500 ~ 6300000)	hex: 2222
	Incoming SPI	The Incoming SPI (Security Parameter Index) value.	hex(600 ~ 600000) / dec(1500 ~ 6300000)	hex: 1111
	Encapsulation Mode	Choose Tunnel or Transport mode, see Chapter 10 for details.	Transport / Tunnel	Tunnel
	ESP – Encryption / Authentication	Select the Encryption (DES, 3DES, AES or Null) and Authentication (MD5, SHA1 or NULL) Algorithm combination. And enter the key either hex or string form separately. Notice: You can not select both Encryption and Authentication “NULL” type.	Encryption: DES(64bits) / 3DES(192bits) / AES(128, 192, 256bits) / NULL Authentication: MD5(128bits) / SHA1(160bits) / NULL Input format: hex {0-9,a-f,A-F} / str {text string}	ESP – Encryption (DES) / Authentication (MD5)
AH - Authentication	Use the Authentication method only. And enter the key either hex or string form.	MD5(128bits) / SHA1(160bits) Input format: hex {0-9,a-f,A-F} / str {text string}	Disabled	

Table 11-6 Add a IPsec Manual Key rule

<p>Step 4. Detail settings of IPsec Manual Key</p> <p>For the detailed setting in the Manual Key. We can press the Advanced button in the previous page. Then set the parameter separately.</p>	<p>ADVANCED SETTINGS > VPN Settings > IPsec > Manual Key > Add > Advanced</p> 
---	--

	FIELD	DESCRIPTION	Range / Format	EXAMPLE
Condition	Transport Layer Protocol	Utilize this field to select some packets which are specified protocol (ANY, TCP, UDP). If the packets are not the specified protocol will not be allowed to pass through IPSec tunnels.	ANY / TCP / UDP	ANY
Action	Enable Replay Detection	Whether is the "Replay Detection" enabled ?	NO / YES	NO

Table 11-7 Setup Advanced feature in the IPSec Manual Key rule

<p>Step 5. Remind to add a Firewall rule</p> <p>After finishing IPSec rule settings, we need to add a firewall rule. Here system shows a window message to remind you of adding a firewall rule. Just press the OK button to add a firewall rule.</p>	<p>ADVANCED SETTINGS > VPN Settings > IPSec > Manual Key > Add</p> 
<p>Step 6. Add a Firewall rule</p> <p>Same as that in IKE method. Please make sure that the Firewall is enabled. Select WAN1-to-LAN1 to display the rules of this direction. The default action of this direction is Block with Logs. We have to allow the VPN traffic from the WAN1 side to enter our LAN1 side. So we click the Insert button to add a Firewall rule before the default rule.</p>	<p>ADVANCED SETTINGS > Firewall > Edit Rules</p> 
<p>Step 7. Customize the Firewall rule</p> <p>Enter the Rule Name as AllowVPN, Source IP as WAN1_VPN (192.168.88.0), and Dest. IP as LAN1_VPN (192.168.40.0). Click Apply to store this rule.</p>	<p>ADVANCED SETTINGS > Firewall > Edit Rules > Insert</p> 

Step 8. View the result

Here we have a new rule before the default firewall rule. This rule will allow packets from 192.168.88.0 / 255.255.255.0 pass through DFL-1500. And accomplish the VPN tunnel establishment.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > Firewall > Edit Rules

The screenshot shows the 'Edit Rules' page in the firewall configuration. It features a table with columns: Item, Status, Name, Schedule, Source IP, Dest. IP, Service, Action, and Log. A single rule is listed with Item #1, Name 'AllowVPN', Schedule 'ALWAYS', Source IP 'WAN1_VPNA', Dest. IP 'LAN1_VPNA', Service 'ANY', Action 'Forward', and Log 'N'. The rule is highlighted with a red border. Navigation buttons for 'Prev. Page', 'Next Page', and 'Move Page' are visible at the bottom.

At DFL-2:

Second, we will use the Manual-Key way to install the IPsec properties of DFL-1.

Step 1. Enable IPsec

Check the Enable IPsec checkbox and click Apply.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > VPN Settings > IPsec

The screenshot shows the 'IPsec' configuration page. The 'Enable IPsec' checkbox is checked and highlighted with a red box, with an 'Apply' button next to it. Below this, there is a section for '(IKE) [Manual Key]' with a table for 'Edit/Modify IPsec Security Associations'. The table has columns: Item, Status, Name, Local LAN, Remote LAN, Mechanism, My IP, and Peer's IP. Navigation buttons for 'Add', 'Edit', and 'Delete' are at the bottom.

Step 2. Add a Manual Key rule

Click the Manual Key hyperlink and click Add to add a new IPsec VPN tunnel endpoint.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > VPN Settings > IPsec > Manual Key

The screenshot shows the 'Manual Key' configuration page. It is similar to the previous screenshot, showing the 'Enable IPsec' checkbox checked and the 'Add' button highlighted in the 'Add', 'Edit', and 'Delete' row at the bottom.

Step 3. Customize the rule

Similar to those in DFL-1, except that you should interchange the Local IP Address with Remote IP Address in the Condition part and the Outgoing SPI with the Incoming SPI in the Action part. Besides, set the Peer's IP Address with the WAN1 IP address of DFL-1.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > VPN Settings > IPsec > Manual Key > Add

Step 4. Remind to add a Firewall rule

After finishing IPsec rule settings, we need to add a firewall rule. Here system shows a window message to remind you of adding a firewall rule. Just press the OK button to add a firewall rule.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > VPN Settings > IPsec > Manual Key > Add

Step 5. Add a Firewall rule

Same as that in IKE method. Please make sure that the Firewall is enabled. Select WAN1-to-LAN1 to display the rules of this direction. The default action of this direction is Block with Logs. We have to allow the VPN traffic from the WAN1 side to enter our LAN1 side. So we click the Insert button to add a Firewall rule before the default rule.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > Firewall > Edit Rules

Firewall->Edit Rules

Edit WAN1 to LAN1 rules

Default action for this packet direction: Block Log Apply

Packets are top-down matched by the rules.

Item	Status	Condition	Action				
#	Name	Schedule	Source IP	Dest. IP	Service	Action	Log

Page 1/1

Prev. Page Next Page Move Page 1

Insert Edit Delete Move Before: 1

Step 6. Customize the Firewall rule

Enter the Rule Name as AllowVPN, Source IP as WAN1_VPNB (192.168.40.0), and Dest. IP as LAN1_VPNB (192.168.88.0). Click Apply to store this rule.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > Firewall > Edit Rules > Insert

Firewall->Edit Rules->Edit

Edit WAN1-to-LAN1 Firewall rule number 1

Status

Rule name: AllowVPN

Schedule: Always

Condition

Source IP: WAN1_VPNB Dest. IP: LAN1_VPNB

Service: ANY

Action

Forward and do not log the matched session.

Forward bandwidth class: def_class

Reverse bandwidth class: def_class

Back Apply

Step 7. View the result

Now we have inserted a new rule before the default firewall rule. Any packets from 192.168.40.0/24 to 192.168.88.0/24 will be allowed to pass through the DFL-1500 and successfully access the 192.168.88.0/24 through the VPN tunnel.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > Firewall > Edit Rules

Firewall->Show Rules

Show WAN1 to LAN1 rules

Packets are top-down matched by the rules.

Item	Status	Condition	Action				
#	Name	Schedule	Source IP	Dest. IP	Service	Action	Log
1	AllowVPN	ALWAYS	WAN1_VPNB	LAN1_VPNB	ANY	Forward	N

Page 1/1

Prev. Page Next Page Move Page 1

Chapter 12 Virtual Private Network –Dynamic IPsec

This chapter introduces Dynamic IPsec VPN and explains how to implement it.

As described in the Figure 2-1, we will extend to explain how to make a dynamic VPN link between LAN_1 and LAN_2 in this chapter. The following Figure 12-1 is the real structure in our implemented process.

12.1 Demands

1. When a branch office subnet LAN_1 wants to connect with another branch office subnet LAN_2 through the public Internet instead of the expensive private leased lines, VPN can provide encryption and authentication to secure the tunnel that connects these two LANs. If the remote VPN peer has a dynamically assigned IP address (DHCP or PPPoE) like Organization_2, we have to use the Dynamic IPsec for the tunnel connection.

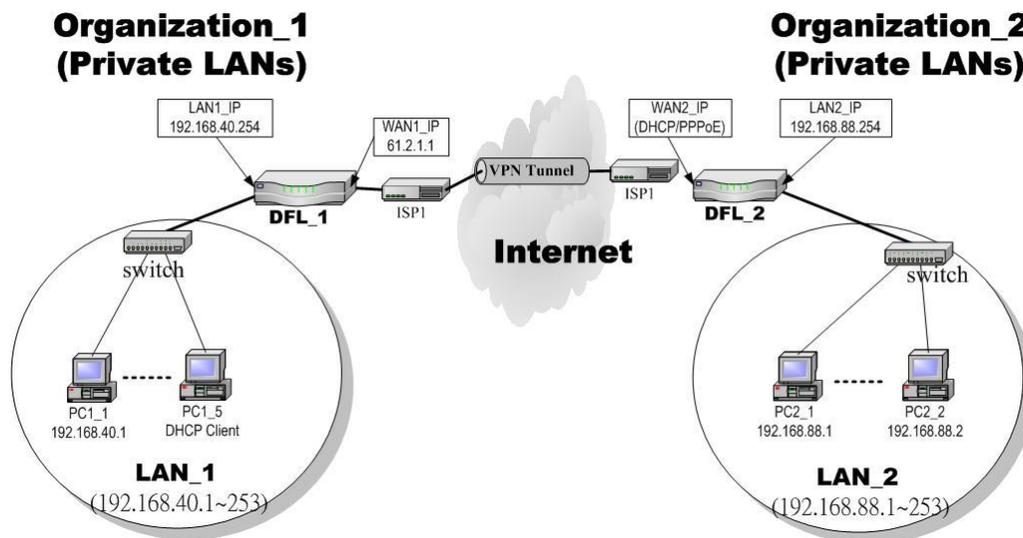


Figure 12-1 Organization_1 LAN_1 is making dynamic VPN tunnel with Organization_2 LAN_2

12.2 Objectives

1. Let the users in LAN_1 and LAN_2 share the resources through a secure channel established using the dynamic IPsec VPN.

12.3 Methods

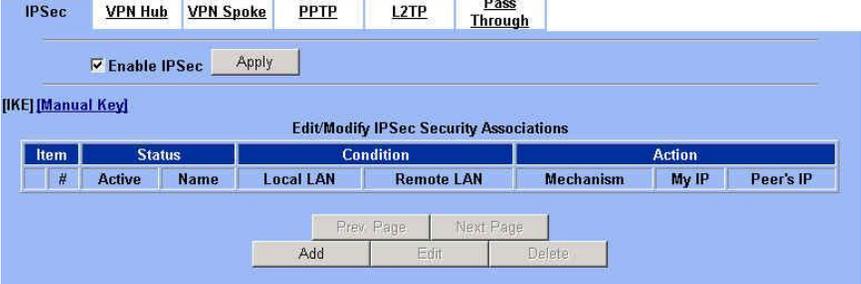
1. Separately configure DFL-1 and DFL-2 which are the edge gateways of LAN_1 and LAN_2 respectively.

12.4 Steps

In the following we will separately explain how to set up a secure DES/MD5 tunnel with the dynamic remote gateway IP address type.

At DFL-1:

At the first, we will install the IPsec properties of DFL-1. For the related explanation, please refer to Chapter 10 and Chapter 11.

<p>Step 1. Enable IPsec</p> <p>Check the <code>Enable IPsec</code> checkbox and click <code>Apply</code>.</p>	<p>ADVANCED SETTINGS > VPN Settings > IPsec</p> 
<p>Step 2. Add an IKE rule</p> <p>Click the <code>IKE</code> hyperlink and click <code>Add</code> to add a new IPsec VPN tunnel endpoint.</p>	<p>ADVANCED SETTINGS > VPN Settings > IPsec > IKE</p> 

Step 3. Customize the rule

Check the Active checkbox. Enter a name for this rule like IKErule. Enter the Local IP Address (192.168.40.0/255.255.255.0) and the Remote IP Address (192.168.88.0/255.255.255.0). Select the Outgoing Interface of this VPN/Firewall Router. Select Dynamic IP in the Peer's IP Address. Be sure to select Aggressive mode for the dynamic remote gateway address type. Click the ESP Algorithm and select Encrypt and Authenticate (DES, MD5). Enter the Pre-Shared Key as 1234567890. Click the Apply button to store the settings. Note, in the Action region. It should choose either ESP Algorithm or AH Algorithm, or system will show error message. If you hope to set the detailed item of IKE parameter. Click the Advanced button in this page. Otherwise it is ok to just leave the value default.

Note that Peers Identifier must NOT be IP Address type in the Dynamic IP type. So, you have to select FQDN (domain name) or user FQDN (mailbox) as the Peer's Identifier.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > VPN Settings > IPSec > IKE > Add

The screenshot shows the 'IKE > Add' configuration page. The 'Status' section has the 'Active' checkbox checked. The 'Condition' section includes 'Local Address Type' set to 'Subnet Address' with 'IP Address' 192.168.40.0 and 'PrefixLen / Subnet Mask' 255.255.255.0. The 'Remote Address Type' is also 'Subnet Address' with 'IP Address' 192.168.88.0 and 'PrefixLen / Subnet Mask' 255.255.255.0. The 'Action' section has 'Negotiation Mode' set to 'Aggressive', 'Encapsulation Mode' set to 'Tunnel', and 'Outgoing Interface' set to 'WAN1'. The 'Peer's IP Address' is 'Dynamic IP'. 'My Identifier' is 'IP Address' and 'Auto_Assigned'. 'Peer's Identifier' is 'FQDN (domain name)' and 'dlink.com'. The 'ESP Algorithm' is 'Encrypt and Authenticate (DES, MD5)'. The 'Pre-Shared Key' is '1234567890'. There are 'Back' and 'Apply' buttons at the bottom.

Self local IP Address

The opposite side IP Address

Step 4. Detail settings of IPSec IKE

In this page, we will set the detailed value of IKE parameter. For the related field, please refer to Table 11-5 indicated.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > VPN Settings > IPSec > IKE > Add > Advanced

The screenshot shows the 'Advanced' settings for the IKE rule. The 'Condition' section has 'Transport Layer Protocol' set to 'ANY'. The 'Action' section has 'Enable Replay Detection' set to 'NO'. The 'Phase 1' section includes 'Negotiation Mode' set to 'Aggressive', 'Pre-Shared Key' '1234567890', 'Encryption Algorithm' 'Encrypt and Authenticate (DES, MD5)', 'SA Life Time' '28800' (with radio buttons for 'sec', 'min', 'hour'), and 'Key Group' 'DH2'. The 'Phase 2' section includes 'Encapsulation' 'Tunnel', 'Active Protocol' 'ESP', 'Encryption Algorithm' 'Encrypt and Authenticate (DES, MD5)', 'SA Life Time' '28800' (with radio buttons for 'sec', 'min', 'hour'), and 'Perfect Forward Secrecy(PFS)' 'DH1'. There are 'Back' and 'Apply' buttons at the bottom.

Step 5. Remind to add a Firewall rule

After finishing IPsec rule settings, we need to add a firewall rule. Here system shows a window message to remind you of adding a firewall rule. Just press the OK button to add a firewall rule.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > VPN Settings > IPsec > IKE > Add

Step 6. Add a Firewall rule

Beforehand, please make sure that the Firewall is enabled. Select WAN1-to-LAN1 to display the rules of this direction. The default action of this direction is Block with Logs. We have to allow the VPN traffic from the WAN1 side to enter our LAN1 side. So we click the Insert button to add a Firewall rule before the default rule.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > Firewall > Edit Rules

Step 7. Customize the Firewall rule

Enter the Rule Name as AllowVPN, Source IP as WAN1_VPNA (192.168.88.0), and Dest. IP as LAN1_VPNA (192.168.40.0). Click Apply to store this rule.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > Firewall > Edit Rules > Insert

Step 8. View the result

Here we have a new rule before the default firewall rule. This rule will allow packets from 192.168.88.0 / 255.255.255.0 pass through DFL-1500. And accomplish the VPN tunnel establishment.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > Firewall > Edit Rules

At DFL-2:

Here we will install the IPSec properties of DFL-2. Note that the “Local Address” and “Remote address” field are opposite to the DFL-1, and so are “My IP Address” and “Peer’s IP Address” field.

<p>Step 1. Enable IPSec Check the <code>Enable IPSec</code> checkbox and click <code>Apply</code>.</p>	<p>ADVANCED SETTINGS > VPN Settings > IPSec</p> <p>IPSec <code>VPN Hub</code> <code>VPN Spoke</code> <code>PPTP</code> <code>L2TP</code> <code>Pass Through</code></p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <code>Enable IPSec</code> <code>Apply</code></p> <p>[IKE] [Manual Key]</p> <p>Edit/Modify IPSec Security Associations</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Item</th> <th>Status</th> <th colspan="2">Condition</th> <th colspan="3">Action</th> </tr> <tr> <th>#</th> <th>Active</th> <th>Name</th> <th>Local LAN</th> <th>Remote LAN</th> <th>Mechanism</th> <th>My IP</th> <th>Peer's IP</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td colspan="8" style="text-align: center;"> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around;"> Prev. Page Next. Page </div> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: center;"> Add Edit Delete </div> </td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Item	Status	Condition		Action			#	Active	Name	Local LAN	Remote LAN	Mechanism	My IP	Peer's IP	<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around;"> Prev. Page Next. Page </div> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: center;"> Add Edit Delete </div>							
Item	Status	Condition		Action																				
#	Active	Name	Local LAN	Remote LAN	Mechanism	My IP	Peer's IP																	
<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around;"> Prev. Page Next. Page </div> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: center;"> Add Edit Delete </div>																								
<p>Step 2. Add an IKE rule Click the <code>IKE</code> hyperlink and click <code>Add</code> to add a new IPSec VPN tunnel endpoint.</p>	<p>ADVANCED SETTINGS > VPN Settings > IPSec > IKE</p> <p>IPSec <code>VPN Hub</code> <code>VPN Spoke</code> <code>PPTP</code> <code>L2TP</code> <code>Pass Through</code></p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <code>Enable IPSec</code> <code>Apply</code></p> <p>[IKE] [Manual Key]</p> <p>Edit/Modify IPSec Security Associations</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Item</th> <th>Status</th> <th colspan="2">Condition</th> <th colspan="3">Action</th> </tr> <tr> <th>#</th> <th>Active</th> <th>Name</th> <th>Local LAN</th> <th>Remote LAN</th> <th>Mechanism</th> <th>My IP</th> <th>Peer's IP</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td colspan="8" style="text-align: center;"> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around;"> Prev. Page Next. Page </div> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: center;"> Add Edit Delete </div> </td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Item	Status	Condition		Action			#	Active	Name	Local LAN	Remote LAN	Mechanism	My IP	Peer's IP	<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around;"> Prev. Page Next. Page </div> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: center;"> Add Edit Delete </div>							
Item	Status	Condition		Action																				
#	Active	Name	Local LAN	Remote LAN	Mechanism	My IP	Peer's IP																	
<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around;"> Prev. Page Next. Page </div> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: center;"> Add Edit Delete </div>																								

Step 3. Customize the rule

Check the Active checkbox. Enter a name for this rule like IKErule. Enter the Local IP Address (192.168.88.0/255.255.255.0) and the Remote IP Address (192.168.40.0/255.255.255.0). Be sure to select Aggressive mode to match the DFL-1 settings. Select the Outgoing interface of this VPN/Firewall Router. Enter the public IP of the opposite-side VPN gateway (61.2.1.1) in the Peer's IP Address. Click the ESP Algorithm and select Encrypt and Authenticate (DES, MD5). Enter the Pre-Shared Key as 1234567890. Select User FQDN (mailbox) and enter dlink.com in My Identifier field. Click the Apply button to store the settings. Note, in the Action region, you should choose either ESP Algorithm or AH Algorithm, or system will show error message.

Note that one of the Peer's IP Addresses is Static IP, and the other must be the Dynamic IP while using Dynamic IPsec VPN type to establish the VPN tunnel.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > VPN Settings > IPsec > IKE > Add

The screenshot shows the configuration page for an IKE rule. The 'Status' section has the 'Active' checkbox checked. The 'IKE Rule Name' is 'IKErule'. The 'Condition' section has 'Local Address Type' set to 'Subnet Address' with 'IP Address' 192.168.88.0 and 'PrefixLen / Subnet Mask' 255.255.255.0. The 'Remote Address Type' is also 'Subnet Address' with 'IP Address' 192.168.40.0 and 'PrefixLen / Subnet Mask' 255.255.255.0. The 'Action' section has 'Negotiation Mode' set to 'Aggressive', 'Encapsulation Mode' set to 'Tunnel', 'Outgoing Interface' set to 'WAN1', and 'Peer's IP Address' set to 'Static IP' with the value '61.2.1.1'. The 'My Identifier' is 'FQDN (domain name)' with the value 'dlink.com', and the 'Peer's Identifier' is 'IP Address' with the value 'Auto_Assigned'. The 'ESP Algorithm' is 'Encrypt and Authenticate (DES, MD5)' and the 'Pre-Shared Key' is '1234567890'. There are 'Advanced', 'Back', and 'Apply' buttons at the bottom.

Step 4. Remind to add a Firewall rule

After finishing IPsec rule settings, we need to add a firewall rule. Here system shows a window message to remind you of adding a firewall rule. Just press the OK button to add a firewall rule.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > VPN Settings > IPsec > IKE > Add

The screenshot shows a reminder window with three numbered points:

- If you enable the firewall, please check whether these firewall rules would block packets in tunnel.
- Packets are blocked by default in the "WAN to LAN" direction, please add a rule to forward these tunneled packets.
- The source address/mask and the destination address/mask of the firewall rules are 192.168.40.0/255.255.255.0 and 192.168.88.0/255.255.255.0 respectively.

An 'OK' button is located at the bottom right of the window.

Step 5. Add a Firewall rule

Same as at DFL-1. We need to add an extra firewall rule to allow IPSec packets to come from internet. So here we select WAN1-to-LAN1 direction, and click Insert button.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > Firewall > Edit Rules

Firewall->Edit Rules

Default action for this packet direction: Block Log Apply

Packets are top-down matched by the rules.

Item	Status	Condition					Action
#	Name	Schedule	Source IP	Dest. IP	Service	Action	Log
Page 1/1							

Prev. Page Next Page Move Page: 1

Insert Edit Delete Move Before: 1

Step 6. Customize the Firewall rule

Enter the Rule Name as AllowVPN, Source IP as WAN1_VPNB (192.168.40.0), and Dest. IP as LAN1_VPNB (192.168.88.0). Click Apply to store this rule.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > Firewall > Edit Rules > Insert

Firewall->Edit Rules->Edit

Edit WAN1-to-LAN1 Firewall rule number 1

Status

Rule name: AllowVPN

Schedule: Always

Condition

Source IP: WAN1_VPNB Dest. IP: LAN1_VPNB

Service: ANY

Action

Forward and do not log the matched session.

Forward bandwidth class: def_class

Reverse bandwidth class: def_class

Back Apply

Step 7. View the result

Now we have inserted a new rule before the default firewall rule. Any packets from 192.168.40.0/24 to 192.168.88.0/24 will be allowed to pass through the DFL-1500 and successfully access the 192.168.88.0/24 through the VPN tunnel.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > Firewall > Edit Rules

Firewall->Show Rules

Show WAN1 to LAN1 rules

Packets are top-down matched by the rules.

Item	Status	Condition					Action
#	Name	Schedule	Source IP	Dest. IP	Service	Action	Log
1	AllowVPN	ALWAYS	WAN1_VPNB	LAN1_VPNB	ANY	Forward	N

Prev. Page Next Page Move Page: 1

Page 1/1

Chapter 13

Virtual Private Network – DS-601 VPN client

This chapter introduces IPSec VPN using DS-601 VPN client and explains how to implement it.

As described in the Figure 2-1, we will extend to explain how to make a VPN link between LAN_1 and a remote client in this chapter. The following Figure 13-1 is the real structure in our implemented process.

13.1 Demands

1. When someone is on a business trip and need to connect back to the company by using VPN function. If he uses the DS-601 VPN client to make IPSec VPN tunnel with Organization_1 LAN_1, please refer to the following diagram to configure the settings.

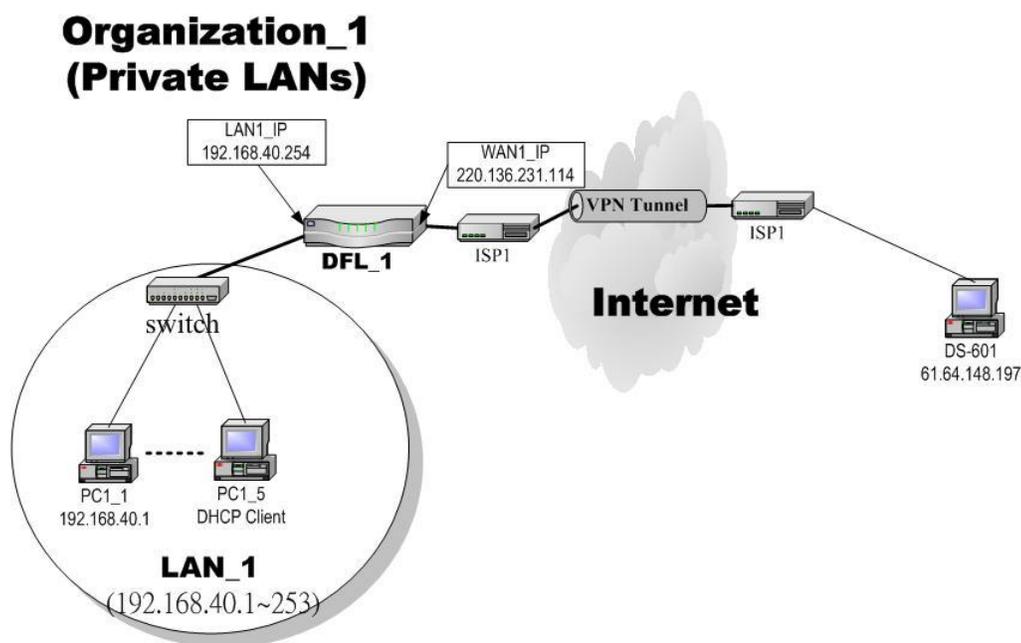


Figure 13-1 The client DS-601 is making IPSec VPN tunnel with Organization_1 LAN_1

13.2 Objectives

1. Let the users in LAN_1 and the client DS-601 share the resources through a secure channel established using the IPSec.

13.3 Methods

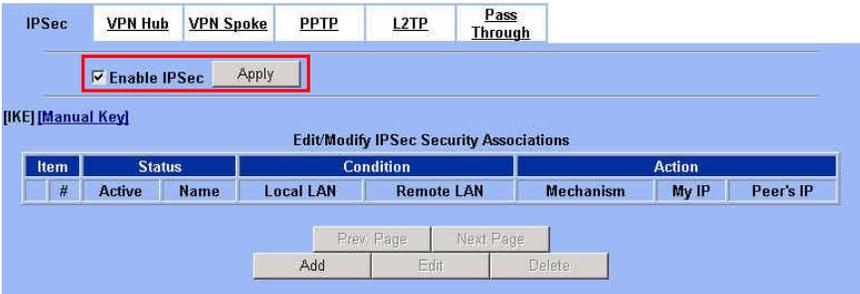
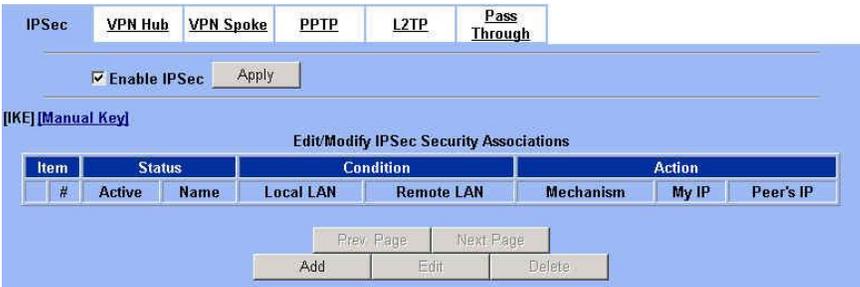
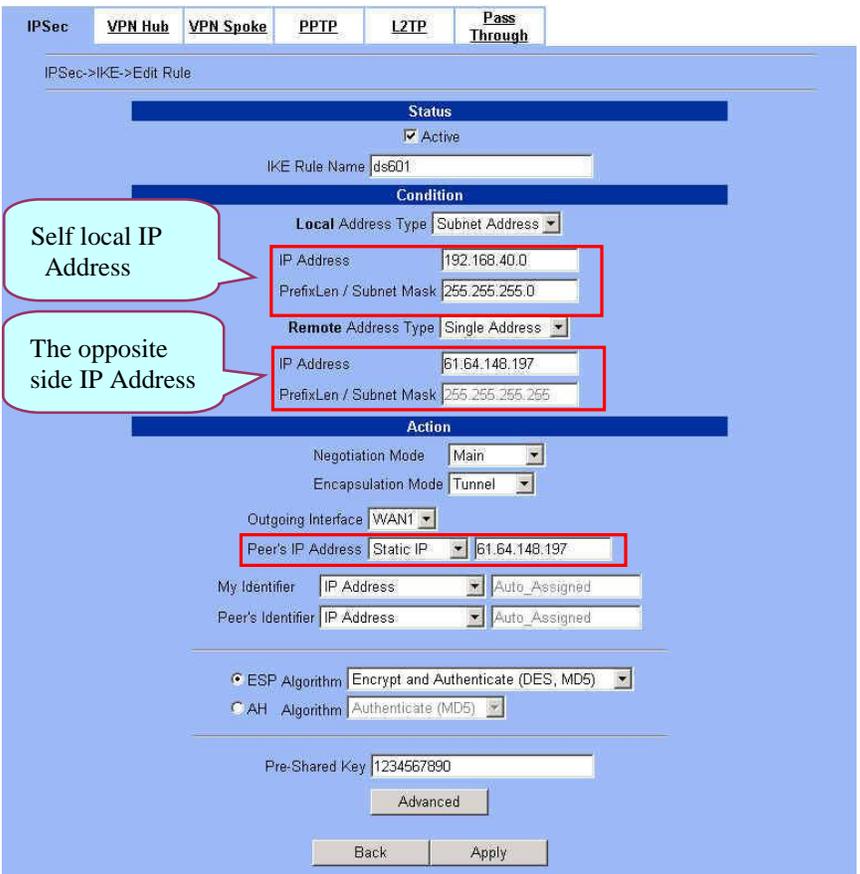
1. Separately configure DFL-1 and DS-601 VPN client to make IPSec VPN tunnel..

13.4 Steps

In the following, we will introduce you how to setup the IPSec between Organization_1 LAN_1 and DS-601 VPN client.

At DFL-1:

At the first, we will install the IPSec properties of DFL-1.

<p>Step 1. Enable IPSec</p> <p>Check the <code>Enable IPSec</code> checkbox and click <code>Apply</code>.</p>	<p>ADVANCED SETTINGS > VPN Settings > IPSec</p> 
<p>Step 2. Add an IKE rule</p> <p>Click the <code>IKE</code> hyperlink and click <code>Add</code> to add a new IPSec VPN tunnel endpoint.</p>	<p>ADVANCED SETTINGS > VPN Settings > IPSec > IKE</p> 
<p>Step 3. Customize the rule</p> <p>Check the <code>Active</code> checkbox. Enter a name for this rule like <code>ds601</code>. Enter the <code>Local IP Address</code> (<code>192.168.40.0/255.255.255.0</code>) and the <code>Remote IP Address</code> (<code>61.64.148.197/255.255.255.255</code>). Select the <code>Outgoing Interface</code> of this VPN/Firewall Router. Enter the public IP of the opposite-side VPN gateway (<code>61.64.148.197</code>) in the <code>Peer's IP Address</code>. Click the <code>ESP Algorithm</code> and select <code>Encrypt and Authenticate (DES, MD5)</code>. Enter the <code>Pre-Shared Key</code> as <code>1234567890</code>. Click the <code>Apply</code> button to store the settings. Note, in the <code>Action</code> region. It should choose either <code>ESP Algorithm</code> or <code>AH Algorithm</code>, or system will show error message. If you hope to set the detailed item of <code>IKE</code> parameter. Click the <code>Advanced</code> button in this page. Otherwise it is ok to just leave the value default.</p>	<p>ADVANCED SETTINGS > VPN Settings > IPSec > IKE > Add</p> 

Step 4. Detailed settings of IPSec IKE

In this page, we will set the detailed value of IKE parameter.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > VPN Settings > IPSec > IKE > Add > Advanced

Step 5. Remind to add a Firewall rule

After finishing IPSec rule settings, we need to add a firewall rule. Here system shows a window message to remind you of adding a firewall rule. Just press the OK button to add a firewall rule.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > VPN Settings > IPSec > IKE > Add

Step 6. Add a Firewall rule

Beforehand, please make sure that the Firewall is enabled. Select WAN1-to-LAN1 to display the rules of this direction. The default action of this direction is Block with Logs. We have to allow the VPN traffic from the WAN1 side to enter our LAN1 side. So we click the Insert button to add a Firewall rule before the default rule.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > Firewall > Edit Rules

Item	Name	Status	Schedule	Source IP	Dest. IP	Service	Action	Log
#								

Step 7. Customize the Firewall rule

Enter the Rule Name as AllowDS-601, Source IP as WAN1_ds601 (61.64.148.197), and Dest. IP as LAN1_VPNA (192.168.40.0). Click Apply to store this rule.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > Firewall > Edit Rules > Insert

Step 8. View the result

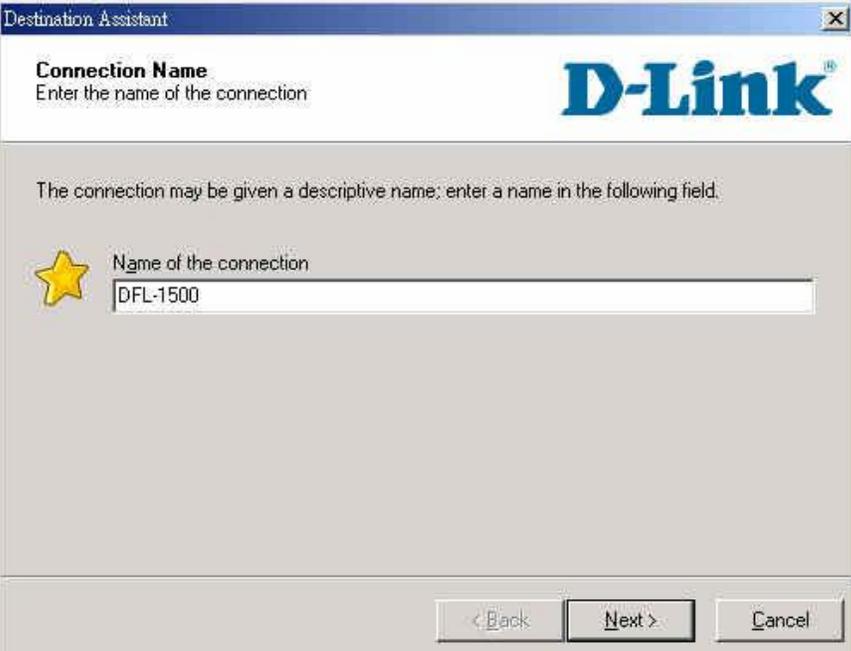
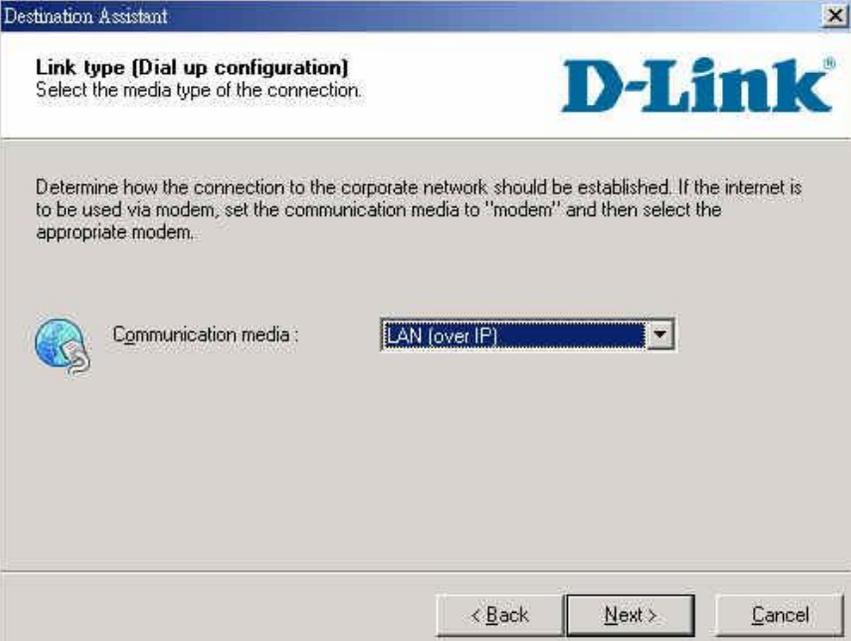
Here we have a new rule before the default firewall rule. This rule will allow packets from WAN1_ds601 (61.64.148.197 / 255.255.255.255) pass through DFL-1500. And accomplish the VPN tunnel establishment.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > Firewall > Edit Rules

Item	#	Name	Status	Schedule	Source IP	Condition	Service	Action	Log
1	1	AllowDS-601	ALWAYS	ALWAYS	WAN1_ds601	LAN1_VPNA	ANY	Forward	N

At DS-601 VPN client:

Here we will introduce you how to setup DS-601 VPN client properties. Before that, please install the DS-601 VPN client into the remote client first.

<p>Step 1. Enter a Connection Name</p> <p>Enter DFL-1500 in the Name of the connection field and click Next to proceed.</p>	<p>Configuration > Profile Settings > New Entry</p> 
<p>Step 2. Select Link Type</p> <p>Select LAN (over IP) in the Communication media field and the click Next to proceed.</p>	<p>Configuration > Profile Settings > New Entry</p> 

Step 3. Setup VPN gateway

Enter the VPN gateway IP (220.136.231.114) which is also the DFL-1's WAN1 IP. Click Next to proceed.

Configuration > Profile Settings > New Entry

The screenshot shows the 'Destination Assistant' window for 'VPN gateway parameters'. The title bar reads 'Destination Assistant'. Below the title bar, it says 'VPN gateway parameters' and 'To which VPN gateway should the connection be established?'. The D-Link logo is in the top right. The main text asks to 'Enter the DNS name (i.e. vpnserver.domain.com) or the official IP address (i.e. 212.10.17.29) of the VPN gateway you want to connect to.' There are three input fields: 'Gateway' with the value '220.136.231.114', 'Username' (empty), and 'Password (Confirm)' (empty). There is a checkbox for 'Use extended authentication (XAUTH)' which is unchecked. At the bottom, there are three buttons: '< Back', 'Next >', and 'Cancel'.

Step 4. Pre-share Key

Enter 1234567890 in the Shared secret field and retype it in the Confirm secret field. Select IP Address and enter 61.64.148.197 as the Type and ID in the Local identity area.

Configuration > Profile Settings > New Entry

The screenshot shows the 'Destination Assistant' window for 'Pre-shared key'. The title bar reads 'Destination Assistant'. Below the title bar, it says 'Pre-shared key' and 'Common secret for data encryption'. The D-Link logo is in the top right. The main text explains that a shared secret or pre-shared key is used to encrypt the connection and needs to be identical on both sides. It asks to 'Enter the appropriate value for the IKE ID according to the selected ID type.' There are two input fields for 'Shared secret' and 'Confirm secret', both containing 'XXXXXXXXXX'. Below these is the 'Local identity' section with a dropdown menu for 'Type' set to 'IP Address' and an input field for 'ID' containing '61.64.148.197'. At the bottom, there are three buttons: '< Back', 'Finish', and 'Cancel'.

Step 5. General information

After finishing the previous setting, we can view the general information here.

Configuration > Profile Settings > Configure > General**Step 6. IPSec General Settings**

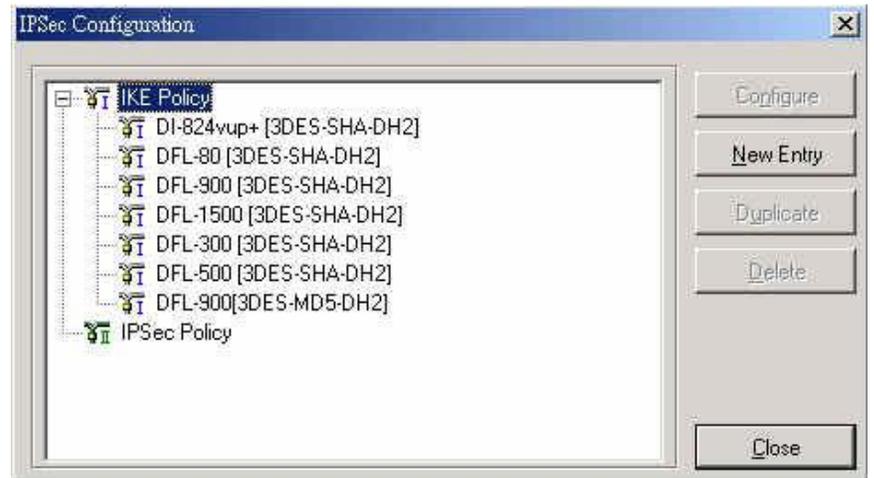
Check if the Gateway IP is correct, and then click the Policy editor to edit IKE and IPSec policy.

Configuration > Profile Settings > Configure > IPSec General Settings

Step 7. Policy editor

Click **IKE Policy** to edit the IKE policy.

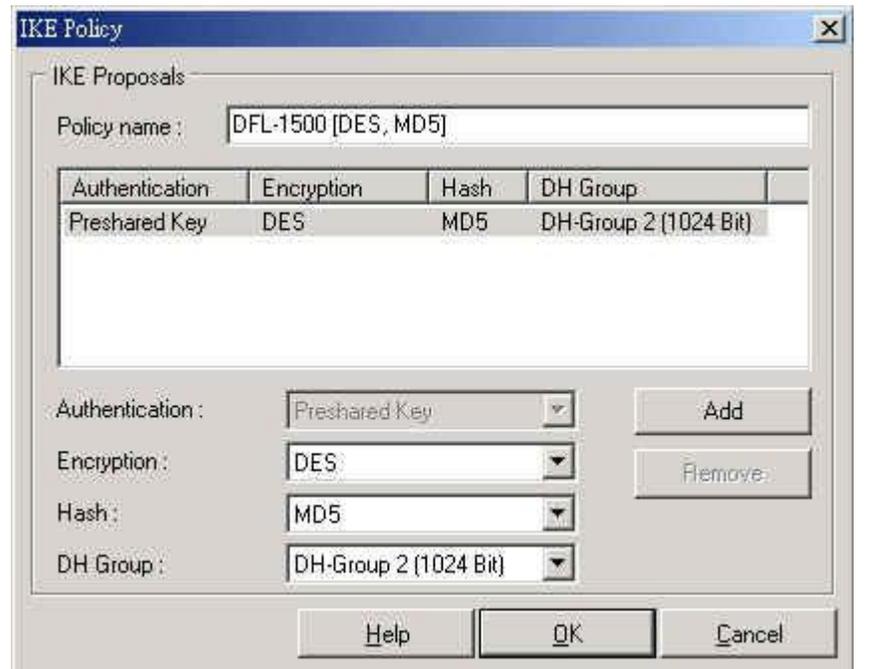
Configuration > Profile Settings > Configure > IPSec General Settings > Policy editor



Step 8. Setup IKE Policy

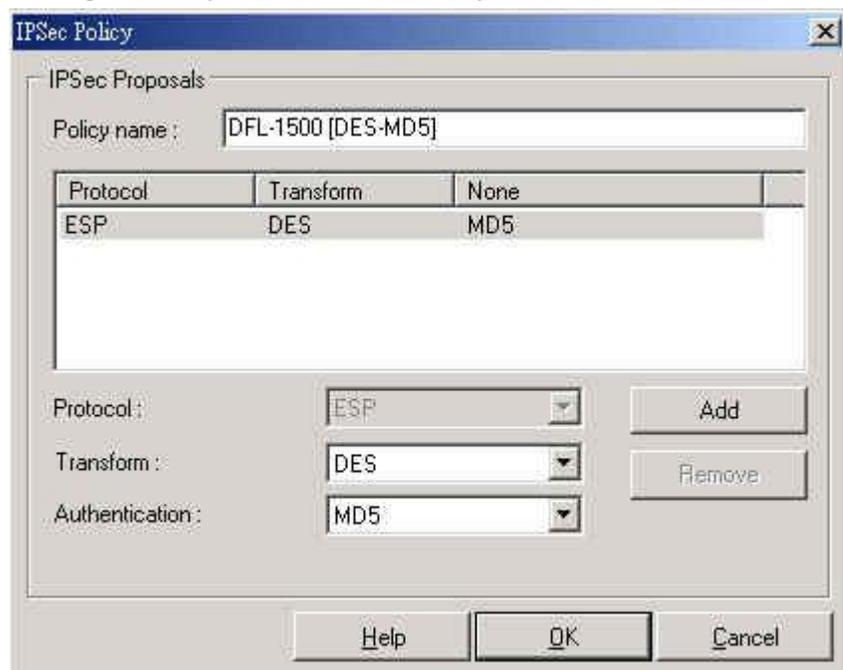
Enter **DFL-1500[DES-MD5]** as the IKE Policy name. Select **DES/MD5/DH-Group 2 [1024 Bit]** in the Encryption/Hash/DH Group field. Click **OK** to finish the settings.

Configuration > Profile Settings > Configure > IPSec General Settings > Policy editor > IKE Policy

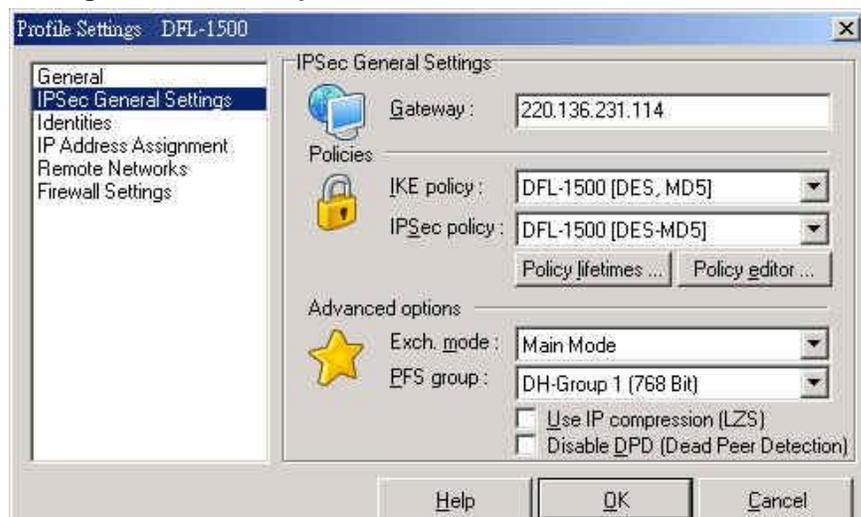


Step 9. Setup IPSec Policy

Enter DFL-1500[DES-MD5] as the IPSec Policy name. Select DES and MD5 in the Transform and Authentication field. Click OK to finish the settings.

Configuration > Profile Settings > Configure > IPSec General Settings > Policy editor > IPSec Policy**Step 10. IPSec advanced options**

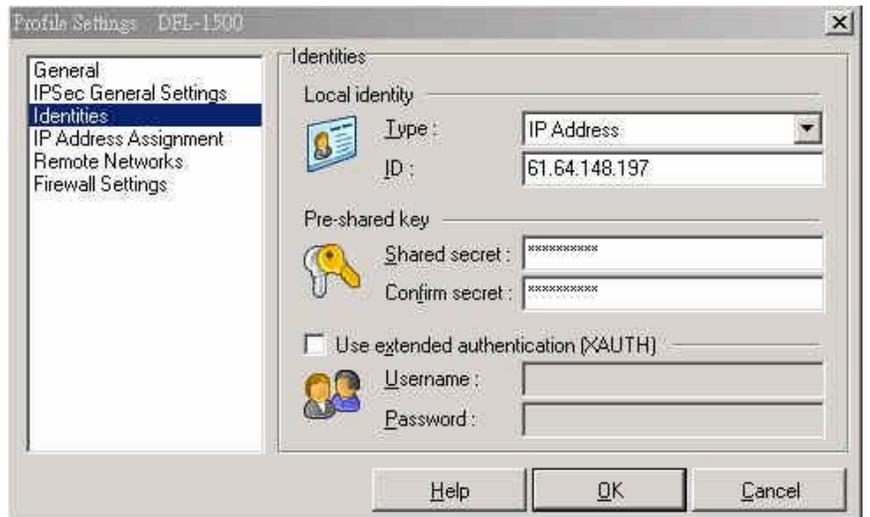
In the Advanced options area, please select Main Mode in the Exch. mode and DH-Group 1 [768 Bit] in the PFS group.

Configuration > Profile Settings > Configure > IPSec General Settings > Advanced Options

Step 11. View Identities

Check if the Local Identity and the Pre-shared key are correct or not. If yes, click OK to finish the settings.

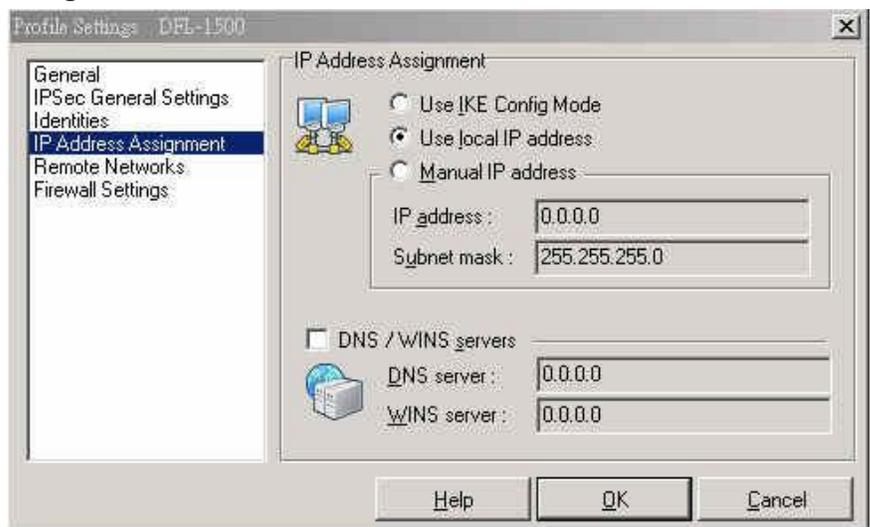
Configuration > Profile Settings > Configure > Identities



Step 12. IP Address Assignment

Select Use local IP address and then click OK to finish this settings.

Configuration > Profile Settings > Configure > IP Address Assignment



Step 13. Setup Remote Networks

Enter the IP network address 192.168.40.0 and subnet masks 255.255.255.0, and then click OK to finish the settings.

Configuration > Profile Settings > Configure > Remote Networks
Step 14. Firewall Settings

In order to avoid any conflict, we recommend you to disable the Stateful Inspection.

'Configuration > Profile Settings > Configure > Firewall Settings

Step 15. Connect the IPSec VPN

Click **Connect** to establish the IPSec VPN tunnel with **Organization_1 LAN_1**. If connection is established, you can view it like right diagram.

Connection > Connect



Chapter 14

Virtual Private Network – Hub and Spoke VPN

This chapter introduces Hub and Spoke VPN and explains how to implement it.

As described in the Figure 2-1, we will extend to explain how to make a VPN link between Main Office (the hub) and the branches in this chapter. The following Figure 14-1 is the real structure in our implemented process.

14.1 Demands

- Suppose that your company has a main office and two branch offices which communicates using a hub and spoke VPN configuration. The main office is the hub where the VPN tunnels terminate, while Branch_1 and Branch_2 are the spokes. The Main office has a VPN tunnel to each branch office. Branch_1 and Branch_2 has its own VPN tunnel to the hub.

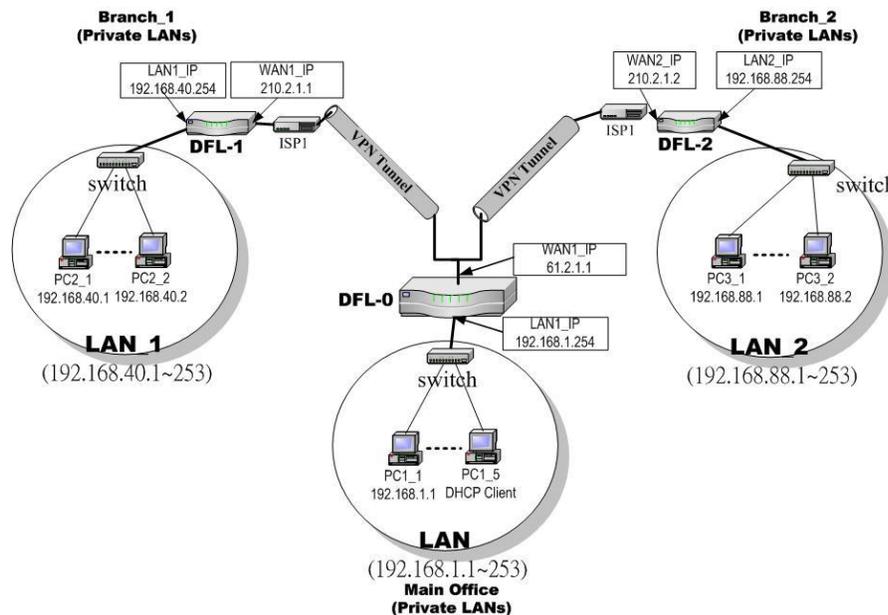


Figure 14-2 The Topology of the VPN Hub (Main Office) and VPN Spoke (Branch offices)

14.2 Objectives

- Using the VPN hub we can create a hub and spoke VPN configuration to direct traffic through a central DFL-1500 from one VPN tunnel to another VPN tunnel. Each VPN tunnel provides connectivity to a different remote VPN gateway. All of the VPN Hub member tunnels can establish VPN connections with any of the other member VPN tunnels.

14.3 Methods

- Configuring the IKE tunnels.
- Configuring the WAN1-to-LAN1 Firewall Rule.
- Configuring the VPN Hub for the Main Office.
- Configuring the VPN spoke for the Branch Offices.

14.4 Steps

In the following, we will introduce you how to setup the Hub and Spoke VPN between main office and two branch offices.

Configuring the IPsec IKE tunnels

For the main office (the hub), we have to create the IKE tunnels, and then create VPN hub and add tunnels to it as members. For the VPN settings, please refer to Chapter 11 for details. Use the information in the following Table 14-1 to configure IKE tunnels. After finishing the IPsec VPN setting, please remember to add a WAN-to-LAN firewall rule.

Field Name	Main Office Information		Branch_1 Information	Branch_2 Information
Status				
Active	Enable	Enable	Enable	Enable
IKE Rule Name	IKEVpnA	IKEVpnB	IKEMainVPN	IKEMainVPN
Condition				
Local Address Type	Subnet Address	Subnet Address	Subnet Address	Subnet Address
IP Address	192.168.1.0	192.168.1.0	192.168.40.0	192.168.88.0
PrefixLen/Subnet Mask	255.255.255.0	255.255.255.0	255.255.255.0	255.255.255.0
Remote Address Type	Subnet Address	Subnet Address	Subnet Address	Subnet Address
IP Address	192.168.40.0	192.168.88.0	192.168.1.0	192.168.1.0
PrefixLen/Subnet Mask	255.255.255.0	255.255.255.0	255.255.255.0	255.255.255.0
Action				
Negotiation Mode	Main	Main	Main	Main
Encapsulation Mode	Tunnel	Tunnel	Tunnel	Tunnel
Outgoing Interface	WAN1	WAN1	WAN1	WAN1
Peer's IP Address	210.2.1.1	210.2.1.2	61.2.1.1	61.2.1.1
My Identifier	IP Address	IP Address	IP Address	IP Address
Peer's Identifier	IP Address	IP Address	IP Address	IP Address
ESP Algorithm	Encrypt and Authenticate (DES, MD5)			
AH Algorithm	Not selected	Not selected	Not selected	Not selected
Pre-Shared Key	1234567890	1234567890	1234567890	1234567890

Table 14-2 The IKE tunnel configuration

Configuring the VPN Hub for Main Office**Step 1. Add a Firewall rule**

Suppose Main Office has already added two VPN tunnels to communicate with two branch offices. Now, the Main Office has to add a firewall rule to allow IPSec packets to come from internet. Before adding a firewall rule, please make sure to add the addresses first. And then organize related addresses to group them together. It will make it easier to add a firewall rule.

Please make sure that the Firewall is enabled. Select WAN1-to-LAN1 to display the rules of this direction. The default action of this direction is Block with Logs. We have to allow the VPN traffic from the WAN1 side to enter our LAN1 side. So we click the Insert button to add a Firewall rule before the default rule.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > Firewall > Edit Rules
Step 2. Customize a Firewall rule

Enter the Rule Name as AllowVPN, Source IP as Spokes [Spoke_1(192.168.40.0), Spoke_2 (192.168.88.0)], and Dest. IP as Hub (192.168.1.0). Click Apply to store this rule.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > Firewall > Edit Rules > Insert
Step 3. Add a VPN Hub

Select Add to add a VPN Hub. Enter a name in the Hub Name field. To add tunnels to the VPN Hub, select a VPN tunnel from the Available Tunnels list and select the right arrow. To remove tunnels from the Members list, select the tunnels and select the left arrow. Select Apply to add the VPN Hub.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > VPN Settings > VPN Hub > Add

Configuring the VPN Spoke for the Branch_1

Step 1. Add a Firewall rule

Suppose Brach_1 Office has already added a VPN tunnel to communicate with the Main Office. Now, the Branch_1 has to add a firewall rule to allow IPSec packets to come from internet. Before adding a firewall rule, please make sure to add the addresses first.

Please make sure that the Firewall is enabled. Select WAN1-to-LAN1 to display the rules of this direction. The default action of this direction is Block with Logs. We have to allow the VPN traffic from the WAN1 side to enter our LAN1 side. So we click the Insert button to add a Firewall rule before the default rule.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > Firewall > Edit Rules

Step 2. Customize a Firewall rule

Enter the Rule Name as AllowVPN, Source IP as Hub (192.168.1.0), and Dest. IP as Spoke_1 (192.168.40.0). Click Apply to store this rule.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > Firewall > Edit Rules > Insert

Step 3. Add a VPN Spoke in Branch_1

Select Add to add a VPN Spoke. Enter a name in the Spoke Name field. Enter the Local IP Address/Subnet Mask and Remote Address IP Address/Subnet Mask.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > VPN Settings > VPN Spoke > Add

Step 4. View the added VPN Spoke

You can view the added VPN spoke here.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > VPN Settings > VPN Spoke

IPSec VPN Hub **VPN Spoke** PPTP L2TP Pass Through

Configuration - VPN Spoke

#	Name	Local LAN	Remote LAN	Tunnel
1	VPNAB	192.168.40.0/24	192.168.88.0/24	IKEMainVPN

Prev. Page Next Page

Add Edit Delete

Configuring the VPN Spoke for the Branch_2

Step 1. Add a Firewall rule

Suppose Brach_2 Office has already added a VPN tunnel to communicate with the Main Office. Now, the Branch_2 has to add a firewall rule to allow IPSec packets to come from internet. Before adding a firewall rule, please make sure to add the addresses first.

Please make sure that the Firewall is enabled. Select WAN1-to-LAN1 to display the rules of this direction. The default action of this direction is Block with Logs. We have to allow the VPN traffic from the WAN1 side to enter our LAN1 side. So we click the Insert button to add a Firewall rule before the default rule.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > Firewall > Edit Rules

Status Edit Rules Show Rules Attack Alert Summary

Firewall->Edit Rules

Edit WAN1 to LAN1 rules

Default action for this packet direction: Block Log Apply

Packets are top-down matched by the rules.

Item	Status	Condition	Action
#	Name	Schedule	Source IP Dest. IP Service Action Log

Page 1/1

Prev. Page Next Page Move Page 1

Insert Edit Delete Move Before 1

Step 2. Customize a Firewall rule

Enter the Rule Name as AllowVPN, Source IP as Hub (192.168.1.0), and Dest. IP as Spoke_2 (192.168.88.0). Click Apply to store this rule.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > Firewall > Edit Rules > Insert

Status Edit Rules Show Rules Attack Alert Summary

Firewall->Edit Rules->Insert

Insert a new WAN1-to-LAN1 Firewall rule

Status

Rule name: AllowVPN

Schedule: Always

Condition

Source IP: Hub Dest. IP: Spoke_2

Service: ANY

Action

Forward and do not log the matched session.

Forward bandwidth class: def_class

Reverse bandwidth class: def_class

Back Apply

Step 3. Add a VPN Spoke in Branch_2

Select Add to add a VPN Spoke. Enter a name in the Spoke Name field. Enter the Local IP Address/Subnet Mask and Remote Address IP Address/Subnet Mask.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > VPN Settings > VPN Spoke > Add

Step 4. View the added VPN Spoke

You can view the added VPN spoke here.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > VPN Settings > IPSec > IKE > Add > Advanced

#	Name	Local LAN	Remote LAN	Tunnel
1	VPNAB	192.168.88.0/24	192.168.40.0/24	IKEMainVPN

Chapter 15

Virtual Private Network – PPTP

This chapter introduces PPTP and explains how to implement it.

15.1 Demands

1. One employee in our company may sometimes want to connect back to our corporate network to work on something. His PC is PC1_1 in LAN_1 instead of DMZ_1 so he cannot directly access the host by simply with virtual server settings. This causes inconvenience for the employee to work remotely.
2. In our branch office, we need to provide PPTP connection methods to connect back to headquarter for the internal company employees.

15.2 Objectives

1. With PPTP tunneling, emulate the mobile employee as a member in LAN1 after he dials in the corporate network. Then he can access all computers in LAN_1 just as if he stays in the office covered by LAN1.
2. Make sure every employee in the branch office can use the network resource in the headquarter. Suppose they are in the same internal network, and keep the communication security.

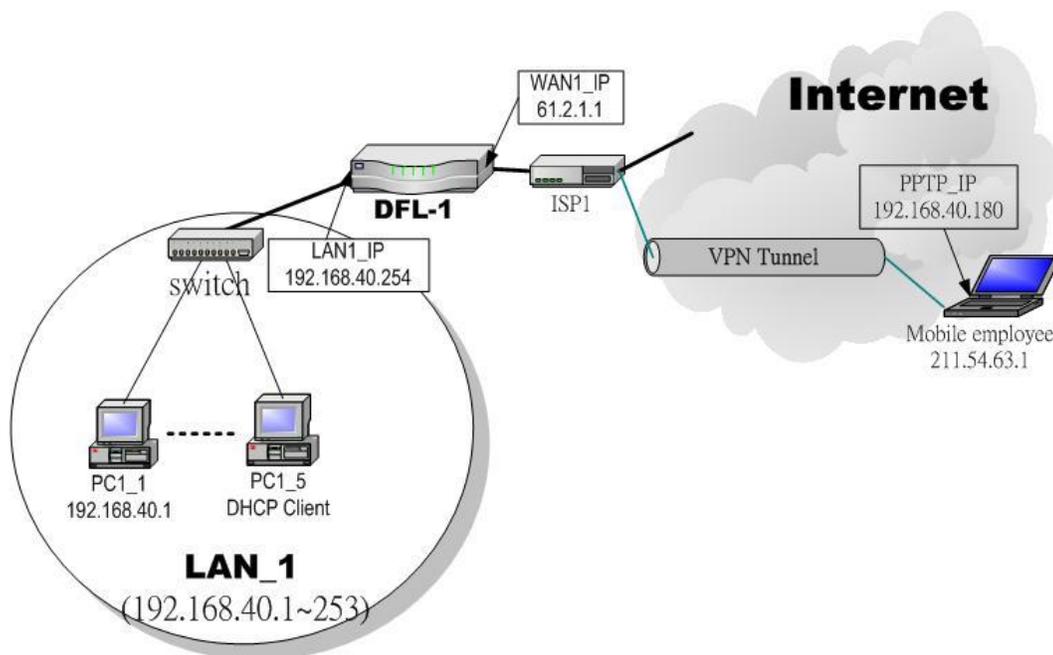


Figure 15-1 PPTP method connection

15.3 Methods

1. Setup the PPTP server at DFL-1500. Setup the remote PC as the PPTP client. After dialing up to DFL-1, DFL-1 will assign a private IP which falls in the range of the settings in the PPTP server at DFL-1. Suppose the range is defined as 192.168.40.180 ~ 192.168.40.199, the remote host may get an IP of 192.168.40.180 and logically become a member in LAN1.
2. Setup the DFL-1500 as the PPTP client. Let all the client PCs behind the DFL-1500. They can connect to the network behind PPTP Server by passing through DFL-1500. It sounds like no Internet exists but can connect with each other.

15.4 Steps

15.4.1 Setup PPTP Network Server

Step 1 – Enable PPTP Server

Check the `Enable PPTP` checkbox, enter the `LAN1_IP` of the DFL-1(192.168.40.254) in the `Local IP`, and enter the IP range that will be assigned to the PPTP clients in the `Start IP` and the `End IP` fields. Enter the `Username` and `Password` that will be used by the employees during dial-up. Click the `Apply` to finish configurations.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > VPN Settings > PPTP

The screenshot shows the configuration page for PPTP. At the top, there are tabs for IPsec, PPTP, L2TP, and Pass Through. The PPTP tab is selected. Below the tabs, there is a checkbox labeled 'Enable PPTP Server' which is checked. Underneath, there are radio buttons for '[Server]' and '[Client]', with '[Server]' selected. The configuration fields are as follows:

- `Local IP`: 192.168.40.254
- `Assigned IP Range`:
 - `Start`: 192.168.40.180
 - `End`: 192.168.40.199
- `Username`: PptpUsers
- `Password`: *****

 An `Apply` button is located at the bottom right of the form.

FIELD		DESCRIPTION	EXAMPLE
Enable PPTP Server		Enable PPTP feature of the DFL-1500	Enabled
Local IP		The Local IP is the allocated IP address in the internal Network after PPTP client dials in the DFL-1500.	192.168.40.254
Assigned IP Range	Start	The Start IP is the allocated starting IP address in the internal network after PPTP client dials in the DFL-1500.	192.168.40.180
	End	The End IP is the allocated ending IP address in the internal network after PPTP client dials in the DFL-1500.	192.168.40.199
Username		The account which allow PPTP client user to dial in DFL-1500.	PptpUsers
Password		The password which allow PPTP client user to dial in DFL-1500.	Dif3wk

Table 15-1 Setup PPTP Server

Step 2 – Setup Windows XP/2000 PPTP clients

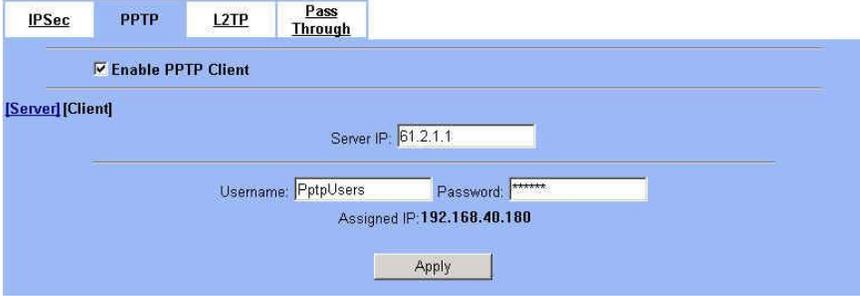
Note that in the DFL-1500 release II version, both PPTP and L2TP can support MPPE. In other words, you can choose “Require data encryption” while a client computer running Windows XP/2000. However, this release II version will not support MS-CHAP, you have to check MS-CHAPv2 checkbox if you would like to require data encryption.

Configuring A PPTP Dial-Up Connection

1. Configuring a PPTP dial-up connection
2. Go to `Start > Control Panel > Network and Internet Connections > Make new connection`.
3. Select `Create a connection to the network of your workplace` and select `Next`.
4. Select `Virtual Private Network Connection` and select `Next`.
5. Give a Name the connection and select `Next`.
6. If the `Public Network` dialog box appears, choose the `Don't dial up initial connection` and select `Next`.
7. In the `VPN Server Selection` dialog, enter the public IP or hostname of the DFL-1500 to connect to and select `Next`.
8. Set `Connection Availability` to `Only for myself` and select `Next`.
9. Select `Finish`.

	<p>Customize the VPN Connection</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Right-click the icon that you have created. 2. Select Properties > Security > Advanced > Settings. 3. Select No Encryption from the Data Encryption and click Apply. 4. Select the Properties > Networking tab. 5. Select PPTP VPN from the VPN Type. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Make sure the following are selected: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> TCP/IP QoS Packet Scheduler 6. Select Apply. <p>Connecting to the PPTP VPN</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Connect to your ISP. 2. Start the dial-up connection configured in the previous procedure. 3. Enter your PPTP VPN User Name and Password. 4. Select Connect.
--	--

15.4.2 Setup PPTP Network Client

<p>Step 1 – Enable PPTP Client</p> <p>Fill in the IP address of PPTP Server and allocates Username/Password. When connecting to the PPTP Server successfully, it will appear the allocated IP address for the PPTP client in the “Assigned IP” field.</p>	<p>ADVANCED SETTINGS > VPN Settings > PPTP > Client</p> 
--	---

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	EXAMPLE
Enable PPTP Client	Enable PPTP Client feature of DFL-1500	Enabled
Server IP	The IP address of PPTP server.	61.2.1.1
Username	The designed account which allows PPTP client to dial in.	PptpUsers
Password	The designed password which allows PPTP client to dial in.	Dif3wk
Assigned IP	The allocated IP address when PPTP client connects to the PPTP server.	192.168.40.180

Table 15-2 Setup PPTP Client settings

Chapter 16

Virtual Private Network – L2TP

This chapter introduces L2TP and explains how to implement it.

16.1 Demands

1. One employee in our company may sometimes want to connect back to our corporate network to work on something. His PC is PC1_1 in LAN1 instead of DMZ1 so he cannot directly access the host by simply with virtual server settings. This causes inconvenience for the employee to work remotely.

16.2 Objectives

1. With L2TP tunneling, emulate the mobile employee as a member in LAN_1 after he dials in the corporate network. Then he can access all computers in LAN_1 just as if he stays in the office covered by LAN_1.

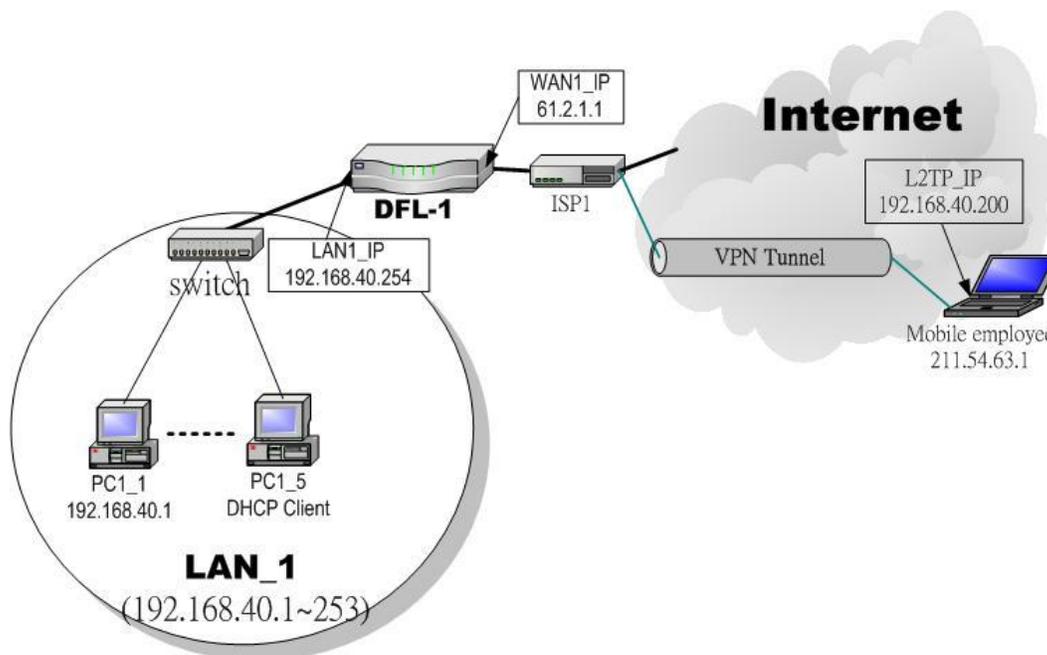


Figure 16-1 L2TP method connection

16.3 Methods

1. Setup the L2TP server at DFL-1500 (LNS: L2TP Network Server). After dialing up to DFL-1500, DFL-1500 will assign a private IP which falls in the range of the settings in the L2TP server at DFL-1500. Suppose the range is defined as 192.168.40.200 ~ 192.168.40.253, the remote host may get an IP of 192.168.40.200 and logically become a member in LAN_1.

16.4 Steps

16.4.1 Setup L2TP Network Server

Step 1 – Enable L2TP LNS

Check the `Enable L2TP LNS` checkbox, enter the `LAN1_IP` of the DFL-1 (192.168.40.254) in the `Local IP`, and enter the IP range that will be assigned to the L2TP clients in the `Start IP` and the `End IP` fields. Enter the IP range in the `LAC Start IP` and the `LAC End IP` that will cover the real IP of the remote users. In our case, since the employee uses 211.54.63.1 so we can fill 211.54.63.1~211.54.63.5 to cover 211.54.63.1. Enter the `Username` and `Password` that will be used by the employees during dial-up. Click the `Apply` to finish configurations.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > VPN Settings > L2TP

The screenshot shows the configuration page for L2TP. At the top, there are tabs for IPsec, PPTP, L2TP, and Pass Through. The L2TP tab is selected. Below the tabs, there is a checkbox labeled 'Enable L2TP LNS' which is checked. Underneath, there are several input fields: 'Local IP' with the value '192.168.40.254', 'Assigned IP Range' with 'Start' at '192.168.40.200' and 'End' at '192.168.40.253', 'Secure Client IP Range' with 'Start' at '211.54.63.1' and 'End' at '211.54.63.5', 'Username' with the value 'L2tpUsers', and 'Password' with a masked value '*****'. An 'Apply' button is located at the bottom of the form.

FIELD		DESCRIPTION	EXAMPLE
Enable L2TP LNS		Enable L2TP LNS feature of DFL-1500	Enabled
Local IP		The Local IP is the allocated IP address in the internal network after default gateway of L2TP client dials in the DFL-1500.	192.168.40.254
Assigned IP Range	Start	The Start IP is the allocated starting IP address in the internal network after L2TP client dials in the DFL-1500.	192.168.40.200
	End	The End IP is the allocated ending IP address in the internal network after L2TP client dials in the DFL-1500.	192.168.40.253
Secure Client IP Range	Start	The IP address starting range which is allowed user to dial in LNS server by using L2TP protocol.	211.54.63.1
	End	The IP address ending range which is allowed user to dial in LNS server by using L2TP protocol.	211.54.63.5
Username		The account which allows L2TP client user to dial in DFL-1500.	L2tpUsers
Password		The password which allows L2TP client user to dial in DFL-1500.	Dif3wk

Table 16-1 Setup L2TP LNS Server settings

Step 2 – Setup Windows XP/2000 L2TP clients

Note that in the DFL-1500 release II version, both PPTP and L2TP can support MPPE. In other words, you can choose “Require data encryption” while a client computer running Windows XP/2000. However, this release II version will not support MS-CHAP, you have to check MS-CHAPv2 checkbox if you would like to require data encryption.

Configuring A L2TP Dial-Up Connection

1. Configure a L2TP dial-up connection
2. Go to Start > Control Panel > Network and Internet Connections > Make new connection.
3. Select Create a connection to the network of your workplace and select Next.
4. Select Virtual Private Network Connection and select Next.
5. Give a Name the connection and select Next.
6. If the Public Network dialog box appears, choose the Don't dial up initial connection and select Next.
7. In the VPN Server Selection dialog, enter the public IP or hostname of the DFL-1500 to connect to and select Next.
8. Set Connection Availability to Only for myself and select Next.
9. Select Finish.

Customize the VPN Connection

1. Right-click the icon that you have created.
2. Select Properties > Security > Advanced > Settings.
3. Select No Encryption from the Data Encryption and click Apply.
4. Select the Properties > Networking tab.
5. Select L2TP VPN from the VPN Type.
 - Make sure the following are selected:
 - TCP/IP
 - QoS Packet Scheduler
6. Select Apply.

Editing Windows Registry

The default Windows 2000 L2TP traffic policy does not allow L2TP traffic without IPSec encryption. You can disable default behavior by editing the Windows 2000 Registry as described in the following steps. Please refer to the Microsoft documentation for editing the Windows Registry.

1. Use the registry editor (regedit) to locate the following key in the registry: HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE \ System \ CurrentControlSet \ Services \ Rasman \ Parameters
2. Add the following registry value to this key:
 - Value Name: ProhibitIpSec
 - Data Type: REG_DWORD
 - Value: 1
3. Save your changes and restart the computer.

You must add the ProhibitIpSec registry value to each Windows 2000-based endpoint computer of an L2TP or IPSec connection to prevent the automatic filter for L2TP and IPSec traffic from being created. When the ProhibitIpSec registry value is set to 1, your Windows 2000-based computer does not create the automatic filter that uses CA authentication. Instead, it checks for a local or Active Directory IPSec policy.

Connecting to the L2TP VPN

1. Connect to your ISP.
2. Start the dial-up connection configured in the previous procedure.
3. Enter your L2TP VPN User Name and Password.
4. Select Connect.

Part V

Content Filters

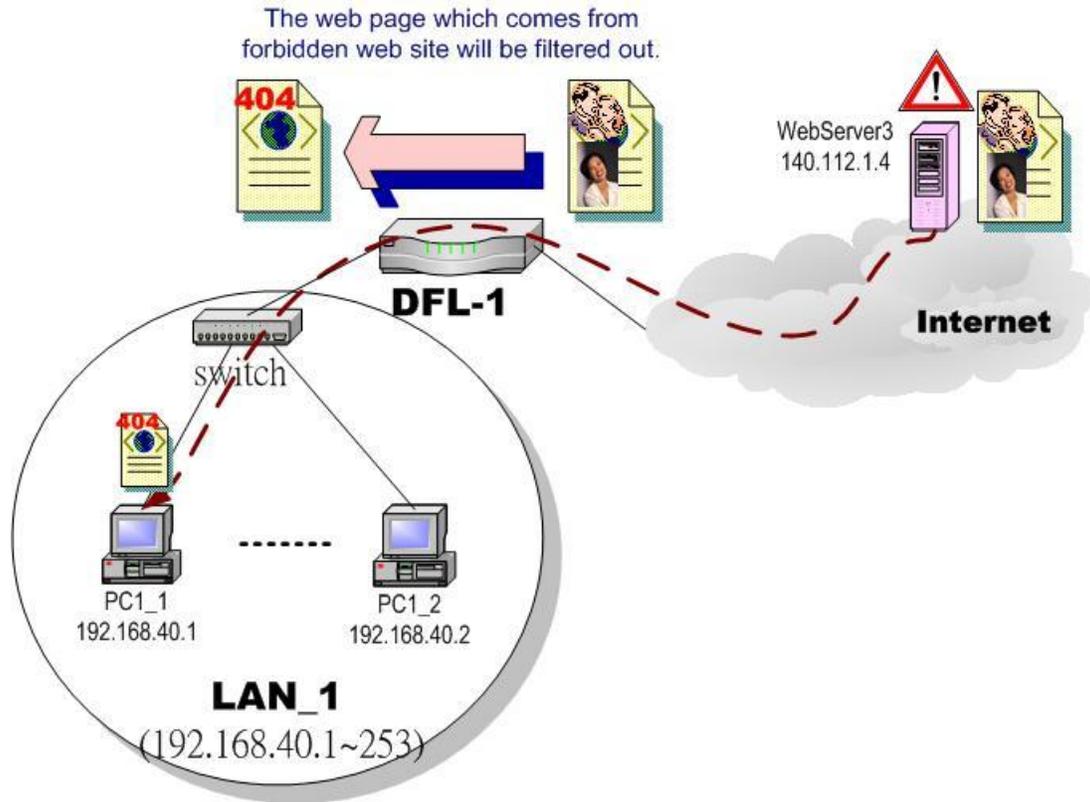


Figure 17-2 Use web filter functionality to avoid users view the forbidden web site

2. As the above Figure 17-2 illustrates, someone (PC1_1) is browsing forbidden web pages on office hours. The contents of the web pages may include stock markets, violence, or sex that will waste the bandwidth of the Internet access link while degrading the efficiency of normal working hours. So, we wish to prohibit the user (PC1_1) from viewing the page on the forbidden web site.

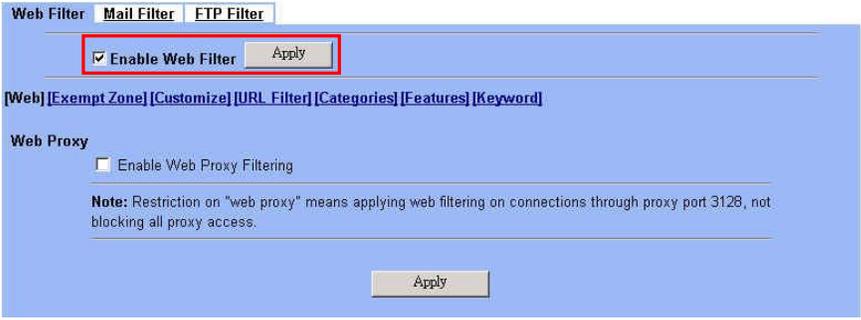
17.2 Objectives

1. Remove the cookies, Java applet, Java scripts, ActiveX objects from the web pages.
2. Prevent users from connecting to the forbidden sites.

17.3 Methods

1. Setup content filtering for web objects such as cookies and Java applets.
2. Setup content filtering for URL requests. For each URL, check the pre-defined upgradeable URL database, self-entered forbidden domains, and self-entered keywords to check if the URL is allowed.

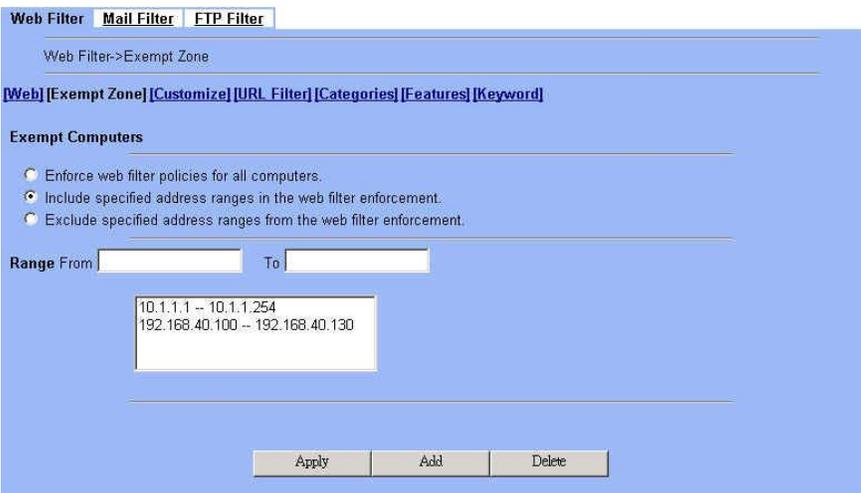
17.4 Steps

<p>Step 1. Enable Web Filter</p> <p>Check the Enable Web Filter checkbox and click the Apply right on the right side.</p>	<p>ADVANCED SETTINGS > Content Filters > Web Filter > Web</p> 
--	--

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	EXAMPLE
Enable Web Filter	Enable Web Filter feature of DFL-1500	Enabled
Enable Web Proxy Filtering	If enabling this feature, all the web pages pass through proxy (Only port 3128) will also be verified by DFL-1500. If disabling the “Web Proxy”, all the web pages through will bypass the verification.	Disabled
BUTTON	DESCRIPTION	
Apply	Apply the settings which have been configured.	

Table 17-1 Enable Web Filter

<p>Step 2. Warning of Firewall</p> <p>This is a warning saying that if you block any web traffic from LAN-to-WAN in Firewall, the access control is shift to the Web Filter. Namely, if you block someone to access the web at the WAN side, after enabling the web filter, he can resume accessing the web until you set a content filter rule to block it.</p>	<p>ADVANCED SETTINGS > Content Filters > Web Filter > Web</p> 
---	--

<p>Step 3. Further Customize the local zones</p> <p>You can configure to what range the filters will apply to the local zones. By default, the web filters apply to all computers so the “Enforce web filter policies for all computers” is selected, and the range is 0.0.0.0 – 255.255.255.255. Delete the default range by clicking the range item and the Delete button. Enter the IP range in the Range fields followed by a click of the Add button to add one address range to the web filter. Click “Include.....” and Apply if you want web filters to only apply to the specified ranges. Click “Exclude.....” and Apply if you want web filters to apply to all computers except those specified ranges.</p>	<p>ADVANCED SETTINGS > Content Filters > Web Filter > Exempt Zone</p> 
--	--

Part V Content Filters

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	EXAMPLE
Exempt Computers	Determine which IP range will exempt the verification by the web filter	
Enforce web filter policies for all computers	Web filter activates at all the computers, not limit range of the IP addresses	disabled
Include specified address ranges in the web filter enforcement	Web filter will only active at below specified computers.	Enabled
Exclude specified address ranges from the web filter enforcement	Except below specified IP address ranges. All the other IP address range, Web filter will active totally.	disabled
Range From	Here we can setup the IP address range, for the above Exempt Computers to use.	10.1.1.1 – 10.1.1.254 192.168.40.100 – 192.168.40.130
BUTTON	DESCRIPTION	
Apply	Apply the above selected “Exempt Computers” radius button.	
Add	Add the specified IP range which filled in the above “Range From” field.	
Delete	Delete the specified IP range which filled in the above “Range From” field.	

Table 17-2 Web Filter Exempt Zone setting page

<p>Step 4. Customize the specified sites</p> <p>Check the Enable Filter List Customization to allow all accesses to the Trusted Domains while disallowing all accesses to the Forbidden Domains. Check the Disable all web traffic except for trusted domains if you want to only allow the access to the Trusted Domains. However, if the web objects are set to be blocked by the DFL-1500 in step 3, these allowed accesses will never be able to retrieve these objects. Check the “Don’t block ...” to allow the objects for these trusted domains. The domains are maintained by enter the address in the Domain field with a click of the Add button. To delete a domain, click the domain with a click of the Delete button.</p>	<p>ADVANCED SETTINGS > Content Filters > Web Filter > Customize</p> <p>The screenshot shows the 'Web Filter > Customize' configuration page. It has tabs for 'Web Filter', 'Mail Filter', and 'FTP Filter'. Under 'Web Filter > Customize', there are links for '[Web]', '[Exempt Zone]', '[Customize]', '[URL Filter]', '[Categories]', '[Features]', and '[Keyword]'. The 'Enable Filter List Customization' checkbox is checked. Below it, two sub-checkboxes are also checked: 'Disable all web traffic except for trusted domains.' and 'Don't block Java/JavaScript/ActiveX/Cookies to trusted domain sites.'. There are two sections: 'Trusted Domains' and 'Forbidden Domains'. Each has a 'Domain' input field and a list of domains. The 'Trusted Domains' list contains 'dlink.com.tw' and 'dlink.com'. The 'Forbidden Domains' list contains 'www.sex.com' and 'www.stockmarket.com'. Each list has 'Add' and 'Delete' buttons. An 'Apply' button is at the bottom.</p>
---	---

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	EXAMPLE
Enable Filter List Customization	Enable the Filter List Customization feature of web filter. If you only enable it, all the domains in the Trusted Domains will be allowed to pass through DFL-1500. Contrarily, all the domains in the Forbidden Domain will be blocked by the DFL-1500.	Enabled

Disable all web traffic except for trusted domains	Except the following specified domain range specified by the trusted domain. All the other URL domain IP addresses are all blocked access.	Enabled
Don't block Java/Java Script/ActiveX/Cookies to trusted domain sites	In the following domain range of the trusted domains. If there are include Java/ Java Script/ActiveX/Cookies components in the web page, the action is setting not to block.	Enabled
Trusted Domains Domain	Here we can specify the Trusted Domains for the above item using. You can enter either domain name or IP address. Note: if the domain name can not be resolved by the DNS server, the domain name entry will be ignored. Another issue is that if there are a lot of domain names in Customize area, name resolving will take longer time on Web Filter starting up.	www.dlink.com.tw www.dlink.com
Forbidden Domains Domain	Here we can specify the Forbidden Domains for the above item using. You can enter either domain name or IP address. Note: if the domain name can not be resolved by the DNS server, the domain name entry will be ignored. Another issue is that if there are a lot of domain names in Customize area, name resolving will take longer time on Web Filter starting up.	www.sex.com www.stockmarket.com
BUTTON	DESCRIPTION	
Add	Add the Trusted/Forbidden Domains IP range to the list.	
Delete	Delete the Trusted/Forbidden Domains IP range from the list.	
Apply	Apply the setting which configured on the checkbox.	

Table 17-3 Web Filter Customize setting page

<p>Step 5. Setup URL keyword blocking</p> <p>Check the Enable Keyword Blocking to block any URLs that contains the entered keywords. Add a key word by entering a word in the keyword field followed by a click of Add.</p>	<p>ADVANCED SETTINGS > Content Filters > Web Filter > URL Filter</p>
--	--

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	EXAMPLE
Enable URL Keyword blocking	Enable URL keyword blocking feature of web filter	Enabled
Keyword	If the Keyword appears in the URL when connect to the Internet using browser. The contents about the URL will be block.	sex
BUTTON	DESCRIPTION	

Part V Content Filters

Apply	Apply the setting which configured on the checkbox.
Add	Add the Keyword to the list.
Reset	Clean the filled data and restore the original one.
Delete	Delete the selected keyword from the list.

Table 17-4 Web Filter Domain Name setting page

<p>Step 6. Customize Categories</p> <p>With the built-in URL database, DFL-1500 can block web sessions towards several pre-defined Categories of URLs. Check the items that you want to block or log. Simply click the Block all categories will apply all categories. Click Log & Block Access if you want to block and log any matched traffic. You can customize the Time of Day to allow such traffic after the office hours, such as 9 : 30 to 17 : 30.</p>	<p>ADVANCED SETTINGS > Content Filters > Web Filter > Categories</p>
---	--

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	EXAMPLE
Use URL Database	Determine how to deal with the URL types in this page (Log & Block Access, Log Only, Block Only)	Log & Block Access
Block all categories	Make all categories below enabled	disabled
Violence/Profanity, Gross Depictions, Militant/Extremist ,etc. items	Check the categories you would like to enable	Enable the checked ones
Time of Day	The time which was set for Web Filter.	09:30 ~ 17:30
BUTTON	DESCRIPTION	
Apply	Apply the settings which have been configured.	

Table 17-5 Web Filter Categories setting page

<p>Step 7. Customize Objects</p> <p>Check the objects of Restricted Features to block the objects. Click the Apply button at the bottom of this page. After finish settings, you can use PC1_1 to browse the web page to see if the objects are blocked. If the objects still exist, the objects may be cached by the browser. Please clear the cache in the web browser, close the browser, reopen the browser, and connect to the web page again.</p>	<p>ADVANCED SETTINGS > Content Filters > Web Filter > Features</p>
--	--

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	EXAMPLE
Restricted Features	Select the below items that will verified by Web Filter of DFL-1500.	
ActiveX	filter the web page that includes ActiveX	Enabled
Java	filter the web page that includes Java applet	Enabled
Java Script	filter the web page that includes Java Script	Enabled
Cookies	filter the web page that includes Cookies	Enabled
MSN over HTTP	filter MSN application which is through http proxy	Disabled
BUTTON	DESCRIPTION	
Apply	Apply the settings which have been configured.	

Table 17-6 Web Filter setting page

<p>Step 8. Setup contents keyword blocking</p> <p>Check the Enable Keyword Blocking to block any Web pages that contain the entered keywords. Add a key word by entering a word in the Keyword field and then click Add to proceed.</p> <p>Note that you can add the keywords as many as you like.</p>	<p>ADVANCED SETTINGS > Content Filters > Web Filter > Keyword</p> <p>Web Filter | Mail Filter | FTP Filter</p> <p>Web Filter->Keyword</p> <p>[Web] [Exempt Zone] [Customize] [URL Filter] [Categories] [Features] [Keyword]</p> <p>Block web content which contain these keywords</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable keyword blocking, limit at 3 matches.</p> <p>Keyword <input type="text"/></p> <p>sex violence blood</p> <p>Apply Add Delete</p>
---	--

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	EXAMPLE
Enable keyword blocking, limit at __ matches	Check Enable keyword blocking, and then the web pages will be blocked if the keywords below you have added are appeared in the pages. "Limit at 3 matches" means that the webpages will be blocked as long as any of the added keywords appear equal or more than three times.	Enabled 3 matches
Keyword	Specify the keyword that you want to block.	sex violence blood
BUTTON	DESCRIPTION	
Apply	Apply the settings which have been configured.	
Add	Add the Keyword to the list.	
Delete	Delete the Keyword from the list.	

Table 17-7 Web Filter Content Keywords setting page

17.5 Setting priorities

The function priority of web filter is shown as the following Figure 17-3 illustrated. From the left feature (Exempt Zone) to the right feature (Keyword). Their priority is high to low.

Notice: The Restricted features of /Web Filter/Web page is lowest priority, but it is located at the most left side.

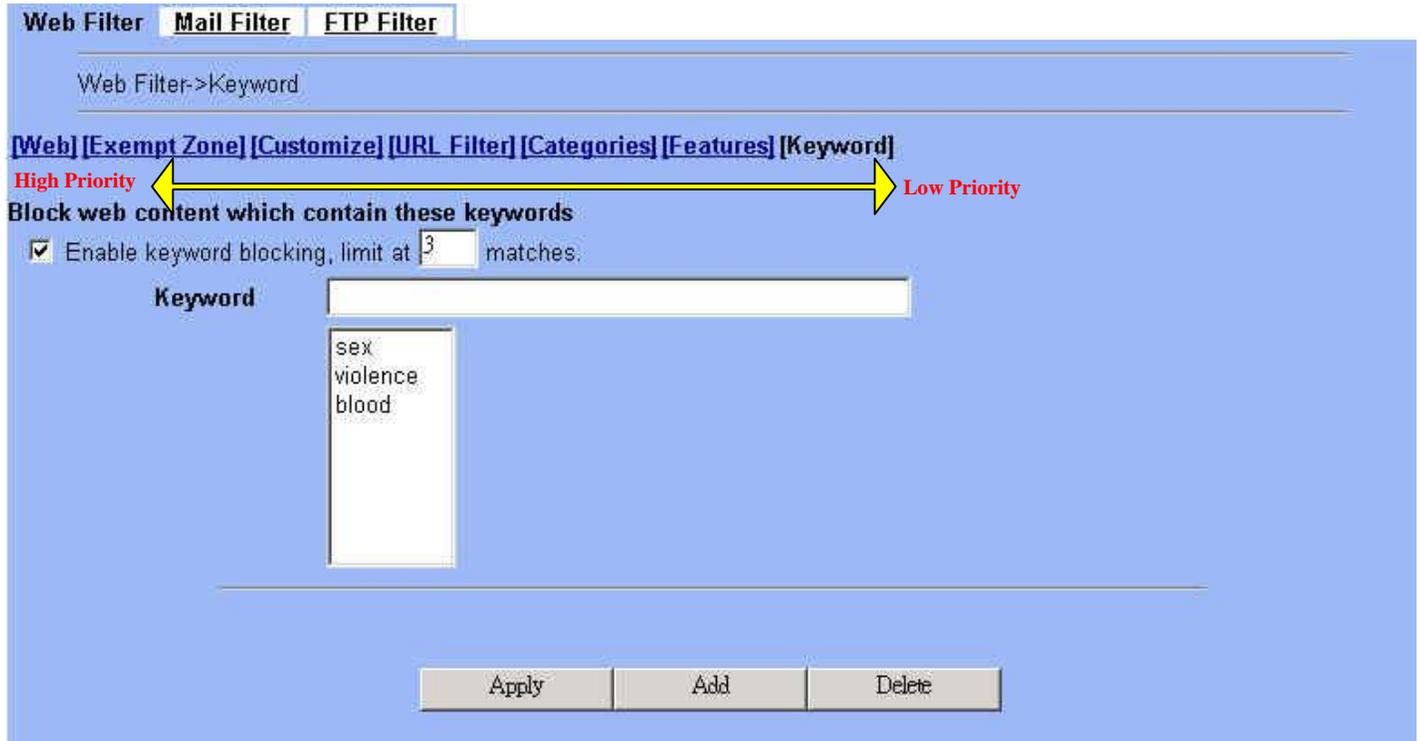


Figure 17-3 web filter features priority (from High to Low)

According to the priorities of web filter, we have the guiding principle to setup the web filter now. As we know, there are many choices according to your requirement in the web filter settings. Here we list the setting priorities for your reference. As the following Table 17-8 indicates, the smaller priority sequence would be executed first when running web filter.

Priority sequence	Selected item	Description	Restricted Region
1.	Web Filter > Exempt zone	Select which LAN region will apply the web filter settings. There are three items to choose (enforce all computers, include specified computers, and exclude specified computers)	LAN
2.	Web Filter > Customize	We can use the Customize domain to indicate the Trusted/Forbidden destination. There are two items for your choice. We can specify which URL domain names are trusted, and which ones are forbidden separately. Warning: Customize will not work on the proxy connections.	Internet web server
3.	Web Filter > URL_Filter	When an URL contains any keywords listed in the domain name, it will be blocked.	Internet web server

4.	Web Filter > Categories	We can use Database Update to update the latest URL database and then the Categories will be updated at the same time. The URL which user request will be blocked if it matches the categories in the URL Database.	Internet web server
5.	Web Filter > Features Web Filter > Keyword	If the web page contains the components includedactivex/java/javascript/cookie which indicated in “Web Filter > Features”, or the keywords indicated in “Web Filter > Keyword”. The forbidden components will be taken off from the web page by web filter.	Web page contents

Table 17-8 web filter features priority

Chapter 18

Content Filtering – Mail Filters

This chapter introduces SMTP proxies and explains how to implement it.

18.1 Demands

Sometimes there are malicious scripts like *.vbs that may be attached in the email. If the users accidentally open such files, their computers may be infectious with virus.

18.2 Objectives

Modify the filename extension of the suspicious email attachments so that email receivers may notice that the file cannot be directly opened by the operating system because of the unrecognized filename extension.

18.3 Methods

1. Setup SMTP filters for outgoing emails from PC_1 (in LAN1) towards the mail server (in DMZ1 or in WAN1) to append a “.bin” to all vbs attachments. Use PC1_1 to send an email with vbs attachments to test the configuration.
2. Setup POP3 filters for incoming emails from a mail server (in WAN1 or in DMZ1) to PC_1 (in LAN1) to append a “.bin” to all vbs attachments. Use PC1_1 to retrieve an email with vbs attachments to test the configuration.

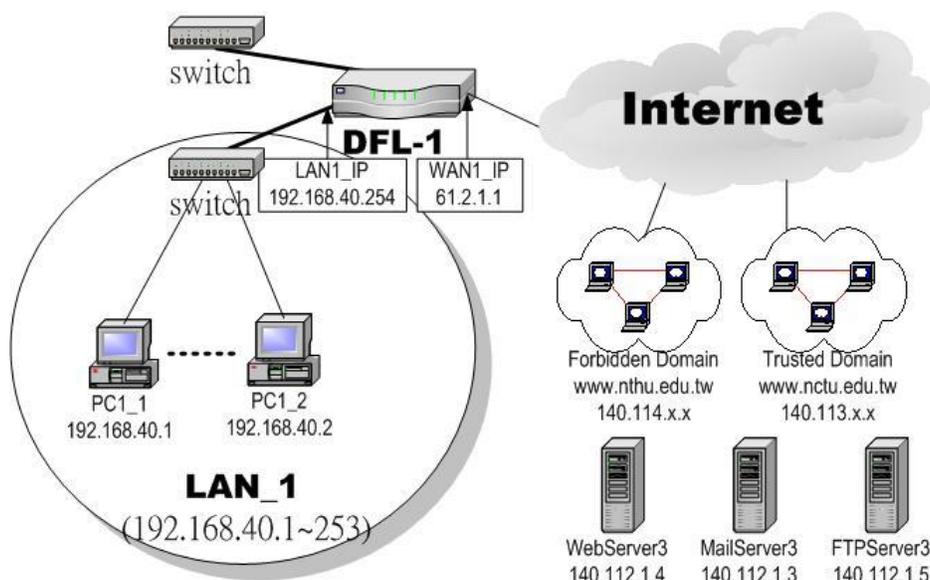


Figure 18-1 Use SMTP / POP3 filter functionality to avoid some sensitive e-mail directly opened

18.4 Steps for SMTP Filters

Step 1 – Enable SMTP Filters

Check the `Enable SMTP Proxy` checkbox and click `Apply`.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > Content Filters > Mail Filters > SMTP

The screenshot shows the configuration page for SMTP filters. At the top, there are tabs for 'Web Filter', 'Mail Filter', and 'FTP Filter'. The 'Mail Filter' tab is selected. Below the tabs, there is a checkbox labeled 'Enable SMTP Proxy' which is checked, and an 'Apply' button next to it. Below this, there are links for '[SMTP]', '[SMTP Exempt Zone]', '[POP3]', and '[POP3 Exempt Zone]'. A section titled 'Append ".bin" to E-mail attachments whose' has a dropdown menu set to 'filename extension' and an empty text input field. Below this is a 'Blocking list' table with columns '#', 'Original Name', 'Type', and 'Mapped Name'. The table contains one row with a radio button, '#', and 'No mapping defined'. At the bottom, there are 'Add' and 'Delete' buttons.

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	EXAMPLE
Enable SMTP Proxy	Enable SMTP Proxy feature of DFL-1500	Enabled
Append ".bin" to E-mail attachments whose	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Ø Filename extension When the filename extension of attachment file matches "Filename extension", add the ".bin" extension to the attachment file. Ø Exact filename When the whole filename of attachment file matches "Exact filename", add the ".bin" extension to the attachment file. 	Filename extension

Table 18-1 Mail Filter SMTP setting page

Step 2 – Add a SMTP Filter

Select `filename extension`, enter `vbs`, and click `Add` to add a rule. This rule will apply to all LAN-to-DMZ/WAN SMTP connections. All such SMTP traffic will be examined to change the filename extension from `vbs` to `vbs.bin`.

Note that the filename to block cannot contain the marks such as `/, \, *, ?, ", <, >, |`.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > Content Filters > Mail Filters > SMTP

The screenshot shows the same configuration page as in Step 1, but with a rule added to the blocking list. The 'Enable SMTP Proxy' checkbox is still checked. The 'Append ".bin" to E-mail attachments whose' section is the same. The 'Blocking list' table now has two rows: the first row is the same as in Step 1, and the second row has a radio button, '#', '1', 'vbs', 'EXT', and 'vbs.bin'. The second row is highlighted with a red border. At the bottom, there are 'Add' and 'Delete' buttons.

<p>Step 3 – Customize the local zones</p> <p>You can configure to what range the filters will apply to the local zones. By default, the web filters apply to all computers so the “Enforce SMTP filter policies for all computers” is selected, and the range is 0.0.0.0 – 255.255.255.255. Delete the default range by clicking the range item and the Delete button. Enter the IP range in the Range fields followed by a click of the Add button to add one address range to the web filter. Click “Include.....” and Apply if you want web filters to only apply to the specified ranges. Click “Exclude.....” and Apply if you want web filters to apply to all computers except those specified ranges.</p>	<p>ADVANCED SETTINGS > Content Filters > Mail Filters > SMTP Exempt Zone</p>
--	--

18.5 Steps for POP3 Filters

<p>Step 1 – Enable POP3 Filters</p> <p>Check the Enable POP3 Proxy checkbox and click Apply.</p>	<p>ADVANCED SETTINGS > Content Filters > Mail Filters > POP3</p>
---	--

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	EXAMPLE
Enable POP3 Proxy	Enable POP3 Proxy feature of DFL-1500	Enabled
Append ".bin" to E-mail attachments whose	<p>Ø Filename extension When the filename extension of attachment file matches “Filename extension”, add the “.bin” extension to the attachment file.</p> <p>Ø Exact filename When the whole filename of attachment file matches “Exact filename”, add the “.bin” extension to the attachment file.</p>	Filename extension

Table 18-2 Mail Filter SMTP setting page

Part V

Content Filters

Step 2 – Add a POP3 Filter

Select filename extension, enter vbs, and click Add to add a rule. This rule will apply to all DMZ/WAN-to-LAN POP3 connections. All such POP3 traffic will be examined to change the filename extension from vbs to vbs.bin.

Note that the filename to block cannot contain the marks such as “/, \, *, ?, “, <, >, |”.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > Content Filters > Mail Filters > POP3

Web Filter Mail Filter FTP Filter

Enable POP3 Proxy

[SMTP] [SMTP Exempt Zone] [POP3] [POP3 Exempt Zone]

Append ".bin" to E-mail attachments whose filename extension is

Blocking list

#	Original Name	Type	Mapped Name
1	vbs	EXT	vbs.bin

Step 3 – Customize the local zones

You can configure to what range the filters will apply to the local zones. By default, the web filters apply to all computers so the “Enforce POP3 filter policies for all computers” is selected, and the range is 0.0.0.0 – 255.255.255.255. Delete the default range by clicking the range item and the Delete button. Enter the IP range in the Range fields followed by a click of the Add button to add one address range to the web filter. Click “Include.....” and Apply if you want web filters to only apply to the specified ranges. Click “Exclude.....” and Apply if you want web filters to apply to all computers except those specified ranges.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > Content Filters > Mail Filters > POP3 Exempt Zone

Web Filter Mail Filter FTP Filter

Mail Filter->POP3 Proxy Exempt Zone

[SMTP] [SMTP Exempt Zone] [POP3] [POP3 Exempt Zone]

POP3 Exempt Computers

Enforce POP3 filter policies for all computers.
 Include specified address ranges in the POP3 filter enforcement.
 Exclude specified address ranges from the POP3 filter enforcement.

Range From To

192.168.40.100 -- 192.168.40.130
 10.1.1.1 -- 10.1.1.254

Chapter 19

Content Filtering – FTP Filtering

This chapter introduces FTP proxies and explains how to implement it.

19.1 Demands

1. Some users in LAN1 use FTP to download big MP3 files and cause waste of bandwidth.

19.2 Objectives

1. Forbid PC1_1 from downloading MP3 files with FTP.

19.3 Methods

1. Setup the filename extension of the forbidden types of file that are not allowed to be transmitted using standard FTP port.
2. Let PC1_1 download a MP3 file from the FTPServer3 to see if the session is blocked.

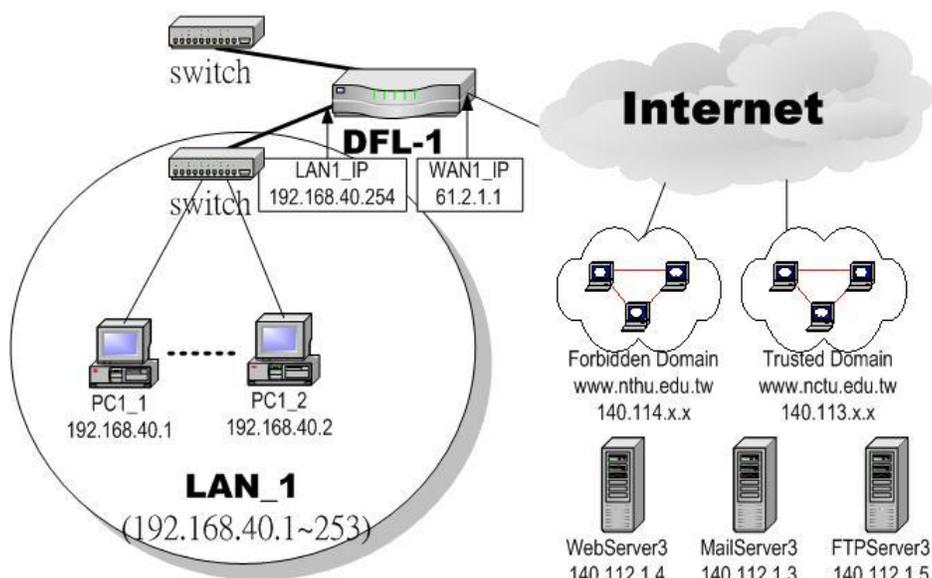


Figure 19-1 Use FTP filter functionality to avoid user download forbidden file type

19.4 Steps

<p>Step 1. Enable FTP Filter</p> <p>Check the Enable FTP Filter checkbox and click the nearby Apply button to enable this feature. Click the Add button to add a new FTP filter.</p>	<p>ADVANCED SETTINGS > Content Filters > FTP Filter > FTP</p>
---	---

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	EXAMPLE
Enable FTP Filter	Enable FTP Filter feature of DFL-1500	Enabled

Table 19-1 FTP Filter FTP setting page

<p>Step 2. Add an FTP Filter</p> <p>Enter mp3 in the Name field and select Extension Name in the Blocked Type field. Click the Add button to apply the change. Now users in LANs can never download any mp3 files.</p> <p>Note that the filename to block cannot contain the marks such as “ /, \, *, ?, “, <, >, | ”.</p>	<p>ADVANCED SETTINGS > Content Filters > FTP Filter > FTP > Add</p>
---	--

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	EXAMPLE
Name	Fill in the file extension or exact filename.	mp3
Blocked Type	<p>Ø Extension Name When the extension filename of download file is matching, the action is blocked download from FTP server.</p> <p>Ø Full Name When the exact filename of download file is matching, the action is blocked download from FTP server.</p>	Extension Name

Table 19-2 FTP Filter FTP adding filter entry

Step 3. View the result

We can see the specified record in this page.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > Content Filters > FTP Filter > FTP

Web Filter | Mail Filter | **FTP Filter**

Enable FTP Filter

[FTP] [FTP Exempt Zone]

	#	Type	Blocked Name
<input checked="" type="radio"/>	1	Extension	mp3
<input type="radio"/>	2	...	...
<input type="radio"/>	3	...	...
<input type="radio"/>	4	...	...
<input type="radio"/>	5	...	...
<input type="radio"/>	6	...	...
<input type="radio"/>	7	...	...
<input type="radio"/>	8	...	...

Step 4. Add an Exempt Zone

Add a new Exempt Zone record. It's IP address range is between 192.168.40.10 to 192.168.40.30.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > Content Filters > FTP Filter > FTP Exempt Zone > Add

Web Filter | Mail Filter | **FTP Filter**

FTP Filter->FTP Exempt Zone

[FTP] [FTP Exempt Zone]

Add Address Range

From Address:

To Address:

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	EXAMPLE
From Address	Exempt zone record IP address from	192.168.40.10
To Address	Exempt zone record IP address to	192.168.40.30

Table 19-3 FTP Filter add an exempt zone entry

Step 5. Show the Exempt Zones

Here we can discover that new added Exempt Zone record is appeared.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > Content Filters > FTP Filter > FTP Exempt Zone

The screenshot shows a web interface for configuring FTP Exempt Zones. At the top, there are tabs for 'Web Filter', 'Mail Filter', and 'FTP Filter'. Below the tabs, the breadcrumb path 'FTP Filter->FTP Exempt Zone' is visible. The main content area is titled '[FTP] [FTP Exempt Zone]'. Under the heading 'FTP Exempt Computers', there are three radio button options: 'Enforce FTP filter policies for all computers.', 'Include specified address ranges in the FTP filter enforcement.' (which is selected), and 'Exclude specified address ranges from the FTP filter enforcement.'. Below these options is a table with three columns: '#', 'From Address', and 'To Address'. The table contains five rows. The first row has a selected radio button, the number '1', the address '192.168.40.10', and the address '192.168.40.30'. The subsequent four rows have unselected radio buttons, numbers '2', '3', '4', and '5', and three dots in both the 'From Address' and 'To Address' columns. At the bottom of the interface, there are navigation buttons: 'Prev. Page', 'Next Page', 'Apply', 'Add', and 'Delete'.

#	From Address	To Address
<input checked="" type="radio"/> 1	192.168.40.10	192.168.40.30
<input type="radio"/> 2
<input type="radio"/> 3
<input type="radio"/> 4
<input type="radio"/> 5

Part VI

Intrusion Detection System

Chapter 20

Intrusion Detection Systems

This chapter introduces Intrusion Detection System (IDS) and explains how to implement it.

20.1 Demands

Although Firewall settings are correct, there may still be some crackers intrude our system. Crackers hack into our system through Firewall-allowed channels with sophisticated skills. Most often, they attack specific application servers such as SNMP, Web, and FTP services in your DMZ.

20.2 Objectives

1. Detect any attacks towards our DMZ servers.
2. Instantly notify our network administrators what attacks have been detected.

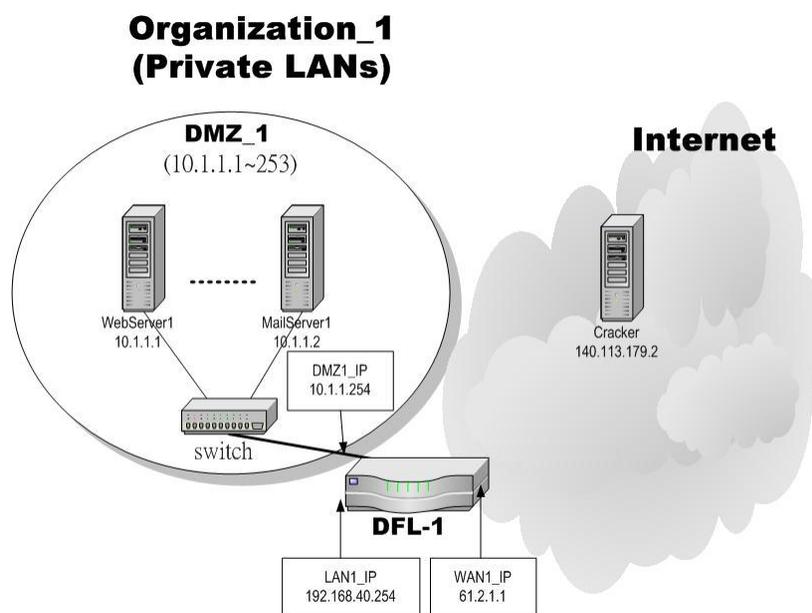


Figure 20-1 Some cracker in the Internet would try to hack our company

20.3 Methods

1. Specify where our Web server is located to let the IDS on the DFL-1500 focus more on the attacks.
2. Setup logs to email to the specified email address when the log is full. You can also set daily/weekly emails to periodically monitor the IDS logs.

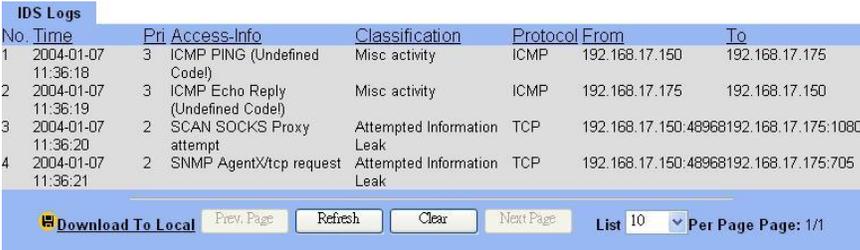
20.4 Steps

<p>Step 1 – Enable IDS</p> <p>Check the <code>Enable IDS</code> checkbox, and click the <code>Apply</code> button.</p>	<p>ADVANCED SETTINGS > IDS > IDS Status</p> 
---	---

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	EXAMPLE
Enable IDS	Enable IDS feature of DFL-1500. When enabled, the built-in IDS will detect more than 2000 application-level attacks from the default WAN link. The attack signatures can be periodically updated.	Enabled

Table 20-1 IDS option explanation

<p>Step 2 – Setup Logs</p> <p>Enter the Mail Server IP Address, Mail Subject, and the email address that you want to receive from. Select the Log Schedule of emailing the logs to your email server.</p>	<p>DEVICE STATUS > Log Config > Mail Logs</p> 
--	--

<p>Step 3 – View logs</p> <p>If there are attacks towards the WAN port from the public Internet, there will be logs describing the details.</p>	<p>DEVICE STATUS > IDS Logs</p> 
--	--

<p>Step 4 – Update Attack Patterns</p> <p>IDS attack patterns require frequent updates because there are many new attacks every week. Please go to System Tools > Database Update > update to update IDS attack patterns. The DFL-1500 will connect to <code>fwupdate.dlinktw.com.tw</code> to fetch any new signatures.</p>	<p>System Tools > Database Update > Update</p>
---	---

Update	
<hr/>	
Status :	
URL database :	v1.40808 [2004/08/09 16:17] <input type="button" value="Update"/>
IDS signatures:	v1.40809 [2004/08/09 16:17] <input type="button" value="Update"/>
<hr/>	
Auto Update :	
Update Center	<input type="text" value="fwupdate.dlinktw.com.tw"/>
Update Schedule On	Sunday <input type="button" value="v"/> <input type="button" value="0"/> <input type="button" value="0"/>
Auto URL update	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Auto IDS update	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input type="button" value="Apply"/>	

Part VII

Bandwidth Management 、 High Availability

Chapter 21

Bandwidth Management

This chapter introduces bandwidth management and explains how to implement it.

21.1 Demands

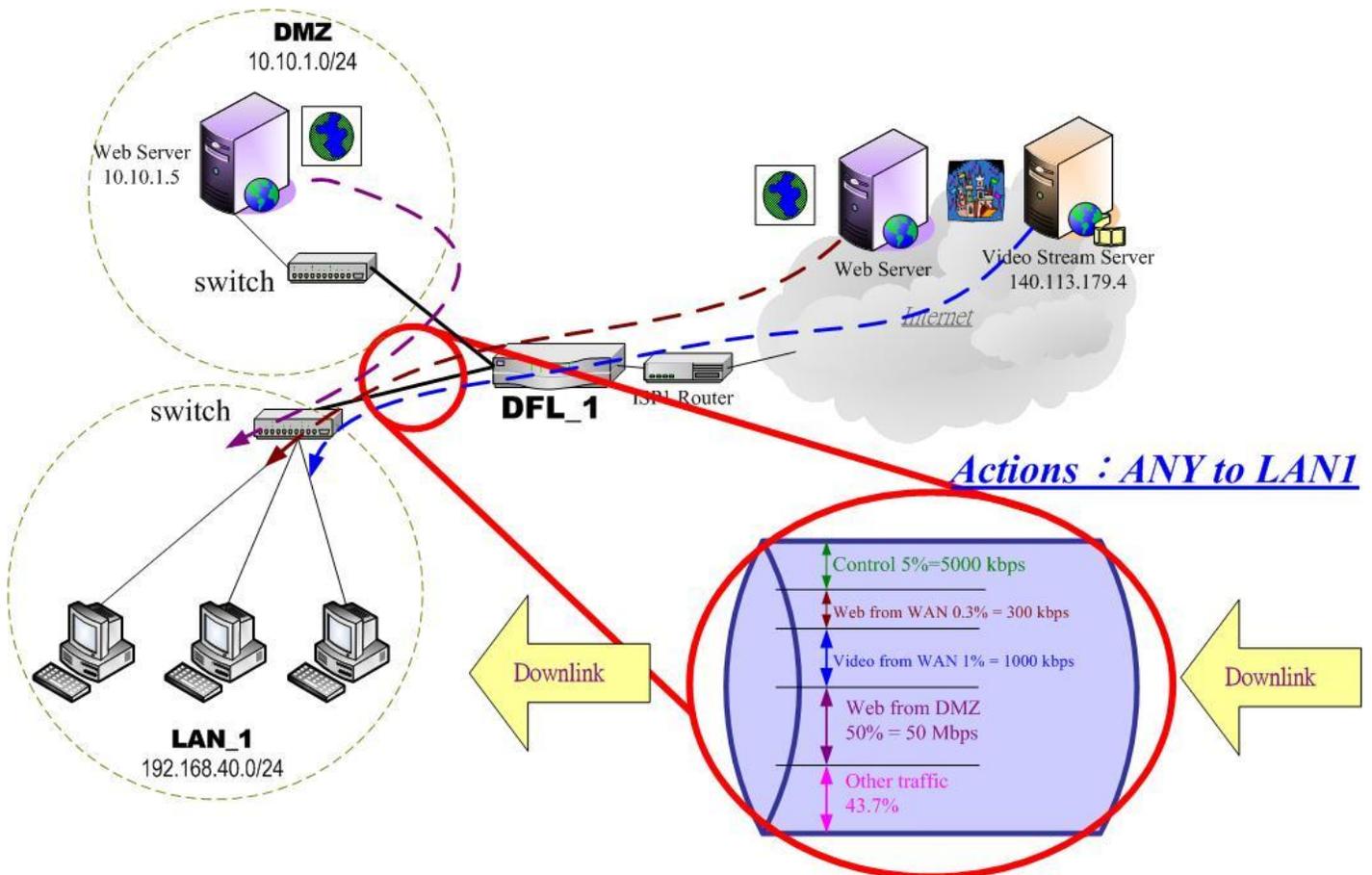


Figure 21-1 Use bandwidth management mechanism to shape the data flow on the downlink direction

- As the above Figure 21-1 illustrated, we hope LAN_1 users can watch the Video Stream Server smoothly. Besides, we hope LAN_1 users can access the web server located at DMZ region more faster

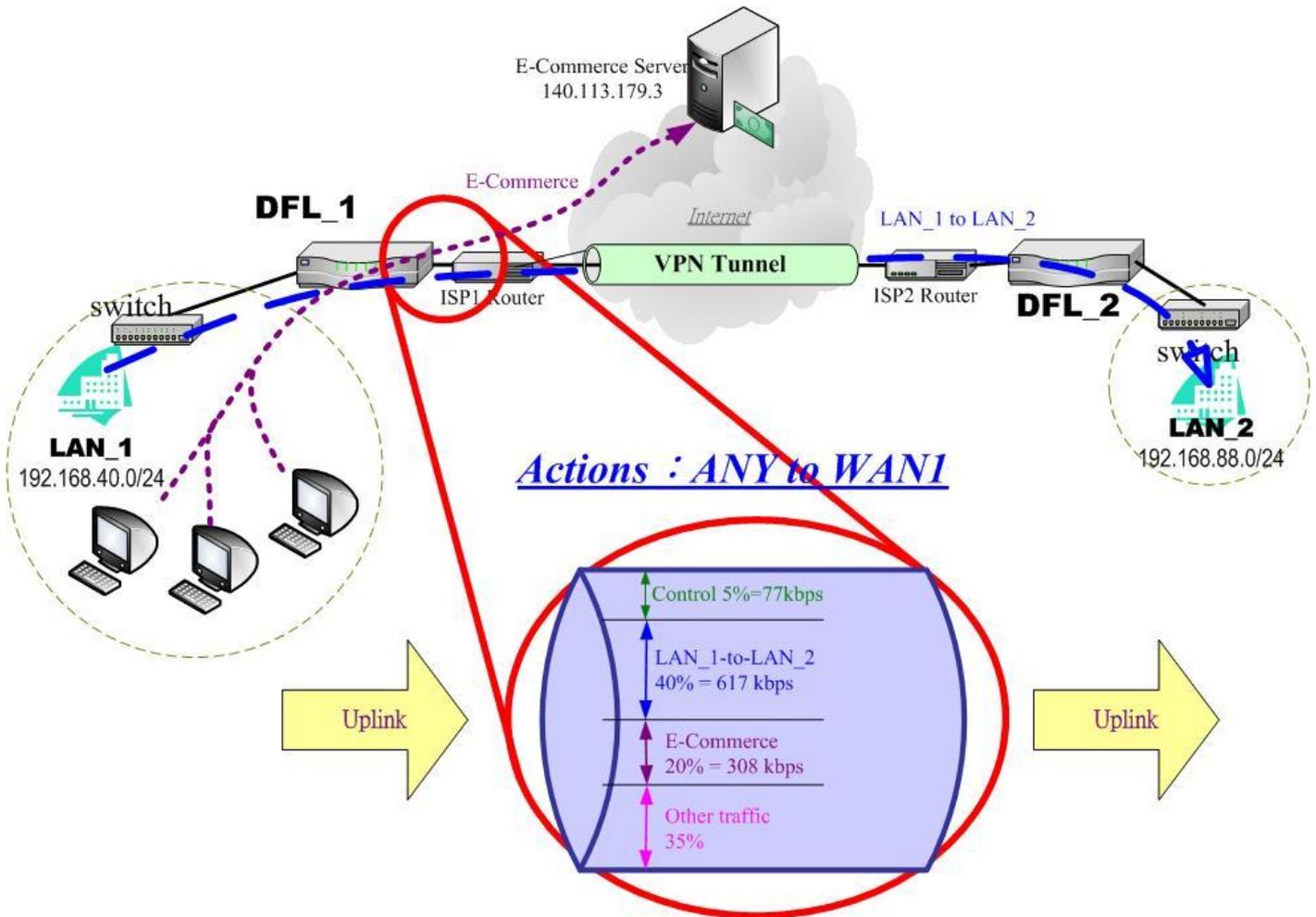


Figure 21-2 Use bandwidth management mechanism to shape the data flow on the uplink direction

- As the above Figure 21-2 illustrated, LAN_1 PCs are using the E-Commerce service from the E-Commerce Server (140.113.179.3), causing the blocking of the VPN transfer from LAN_1 to LAN_2. So we want to make sure that the VPN tunnel links is reserved at least 600 kbps speed rate. And the free bandwidth will raise the transmission bandwidth of LAN_1 PCs access the E-Commerce service.

21.2 Objectives

- As the above diagram Figure 21-1 illustrates, LAN_1 PCs are browsing the web pages from the Web Server of Internet. This occupies the bandwidth of PCs who are watching the video provided by the Video Stream Server (140.113.179.4), causing the video to be blocked and to have poor quality. So we hope to guarantee the video quality of the LAN_1 PCs which are accessing Video Stream Server.

The total bandwidth of ANY to LAN1 direction is 100 Mbps (The bandwidth of LAN1 interface is 100 Mbps). Here we will make sure that PCs of LAN_1 have the smooth stream quality that must have at least 1% of LAN1 total bandwidth (1000 kbps) speed rate.

Besides, we have another web server located at DMZ region. Because the web server is located at local area, so we can assign larger bandwidth for this direction (web traffic from DMZ to LAN).

The remaining bandwidths are named Other traffic. They are reserved for other ANY to LAN1 data transmission which don't list in the above Figure 21-1 diagram.

- Reserve at least 600kbps for the LAN_1 to LAN_2 transfer. The LAN_1 PCs can share about 20% (308kbps) for using E-Commerce Services. However, when the LAN_1 to LAN_2 traffic less than 40% (617kbps), the E-Commerce service can occupy the free bandwidth from LAN_1-to-LAN_2 and the remaining bandwidth from default class.

21.3 Methods

- As the following Table 21-1 listed, partition the inbound bandwidth (total 100Mbps) into three classes, web_from_WAN, video_from_WAN and web_from_DMZ class. The remaining bandwidth is assigned to other services which are not listed here.

Service	Goal	Assigned bandwidth	Borrow bit status
Web from WAN	limited bandwidth (MAX. 300kbps)	0.3% = 300kbps	Disabled
Video from WAN	guaranteed bandwidth (At least 1000kbps)	1% = 1000kbps	Enabled
Web from DMZ	guaranteed bandwidth (At least 50Mbps)	50% = 50Mbps	Enabled

Table 21-1 Bandwidth management action assignment from ANY to LAN1

- As the following Table 21-2 listed. Partition the outbound bandwidth (total 1.544Mbps) into two classes, the LAN_1-to-LAN_2 (40% 617 kbps) and the E-commerce (20% 308kbps) classes. Besides, set the E-Commerce to be able to borrow from other bandwidth if any bandwidth is available.

Service	Goal	Assigned bandwidth	Borrow bit status
LAN_1 to LAN_2	limited bandwidth (MAX. 617kbps)	40% = 617kbps	Disabled
E-Commerce	guaranteed bandwidth (At least 308kbps)	20% = 308kbps	Enabled

Table 21-2 Bandwidth management action assignment from ANY to WAN1

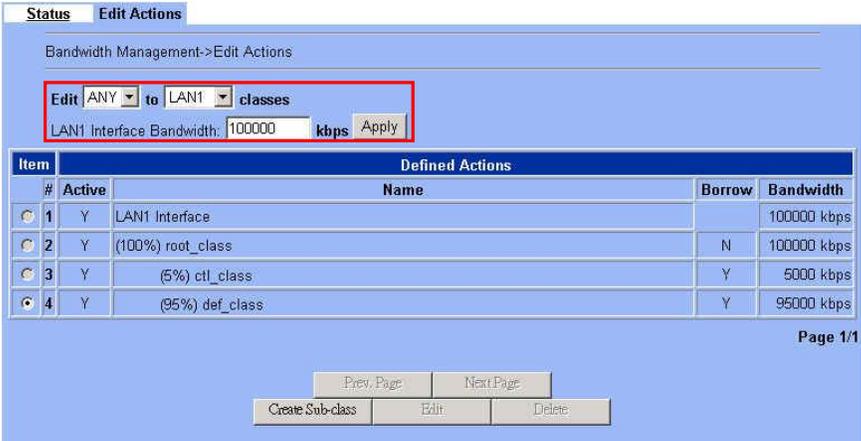
21.4 Steps

21.4.1 Inbound Traffic Management

<p>Step 1. Enable Bandwidth Management</p> <p>Check the Enable Bandwidth Management checkbox, click the Apply.</p>	<p>ADVANCED SETTINGS > Bandwidth Mgt. > Status</p> 
---	--

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	Range/Format	EXAMPLE
Enable Bandwidth Management	Enable Bandwidth Management feature of DFL-1500	Enable/Disable	Enabled
BUTTON	DESCRIPTION		
Reset Bandwidth Management	Reset all the bandwidth management rules to default status.		
Apply	Apply the settings which have been configured.		
Reset	Clean the filled data and restore the original one.		

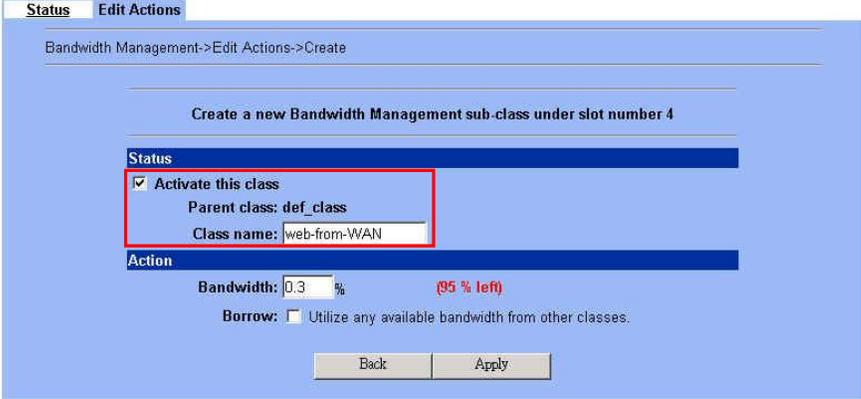
Table 21-3 Setup status page of Bandwidth Management

<p>Step 2. Setup the LAN1 Link</p> <p>Select ANY to LAN1 to setup traffic that will be transmitted by the LAN1 interface. Enter the LAN1 interface bandwidth as 100000kbps (100Mbps). Click the Apply button to enforce the LAN1 link bandwidth to be specified bandwidth. In the table, the root class represents the whole bandwidth of the link. By default the link is partitioned into two classes: control class (ctl_class) and default class (def_class). The control class reserves bandwidth for control protocols such as ICMP, TCP ACKs. The default class is the default action of non-matched packets. The default class can be recursively partitioned into more classes. The classes are organized as a tree. Click Create Sub-Class to partition the default class.</p>	<p>ADVANCED SETTINGS > Bandwidth Mgt. > Edit Actions</p> 
---	--

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	Range/Format	EXAMPLE
Edit __ to __ classes	Select the direction of action which you are going to configure one.	ANY to WAN/LAN/DMZ	Edit ANY to LAN1 classes
LAN1 Interface Bandwidth __ kbps	Fill the real bandwidth which is located in the upper direction.	10 to 100000 kbps	100000 kbps

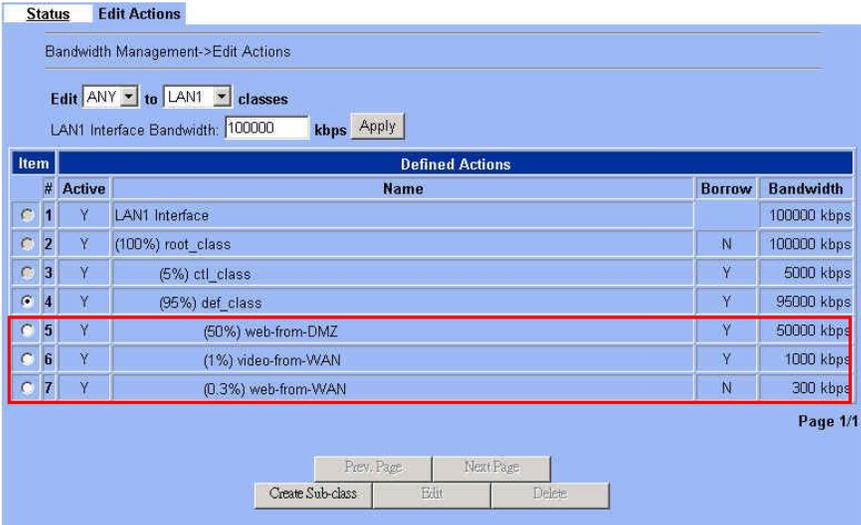
BUTTON	DESCRIPTION
Prev. Page	If there are more than one action pages, you can press Prev. Page to back to the previous page.
Next Page	If there are more than one action pages, you can press Next Page to go to the next page.
Create-Sub-class	Create a sub class from the indicated class.
Edit	Edit the properties of the existent class.
Delete	Delete the indicated class.

Table 21-4 Setup edit actions page of Bandwidth Management

<p>Step 3. Add new classes</p> <p>Create a sub-class named <code>web-from-WAN</code> from the default class. Enter 0.3% in the bandwidth field. Make sure that <code>Borrow</code> button is unchecked and then <code>web-from-WAN</code> class will not enlarge the bandwidth from borrowing other unused bandwidth. Finally, click <code>Apply</code> button. See the steps in the right diagram.</p> <p>Subsequently, we will continue to setup another two classes, such as <code>video-from-WAN</code> class and <code>web-from-DMZ</code> class. Select the default class and click the <code>Create Sub-Class</code> to create these two classes. The setting procedure is the same as the <code>web-from-WAN</code> class described.</p>	<p>ADVANCED SETTINGS > Bandwidth Mgt. > Edit Actions > Create Sub-class</p> 
---	---

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	Range/Format	EXAMPLE
Activate this class	Enable the bandwidth management class for later using	Enable/Disable	Enabled
Class name	Bandwidth management class name	text string	web-from-WAN
Bandwidth	How many percentage does this class occupy higher class?	0.1 ~ Max Value (as red text described)	0.3
Borrow	When the bandwidth of other class is idle, it will use the bandwidth of other class to increase bandwidth temporarily.	Enable/Disable	Disabled
BUTTON	DESCRIPTION		
Back	back to previous configuration page.		
Apply	Apply the settings which have been configured.		

Table 21-5 Add new class in the bandwidth management feature

<p>Step 4. Partition into Classes Now there are three actions under the default action.</p>	<p>ADVANCED SETTINGS > Bandwidth Mgt. > Edit Actions > Create Sub-Class</p> 
<p>Step 5. Setup WAN1-to-LAN1 Rules Select WAN1 to LAN1 to display the rules. There is a pre-defined rule that matches all traffic into the default class. Click Insert to insert a rule before the default rule.</p>	<p>ADVANCED SETTINGS > Firewall > Edit Rules</p> 

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	Range/Format	EXAMPLE
Edit __ to __ rules	Select the rule direction of rule which you are going to configure.	WAN/LAN/DMZ to WAN/LAN/DMZ	Edit WAN1 to LAN1 rules
BUTTON	DESCRIPTION		
Prev. Page	If there are more than one rule pages, you can press Prev. Page to back to the previous page.		
Next Page	If there are more than one action rules, you can press Next Page to go to the next page.		
Move Page __	Move to the indicated page.		
Insert	Insert a new rule.		
Edit	Edit the properties of the existent rule.		
Delete	Delete the indicated rule.		
Move Before __	Move the selected rule to the front of the indicated rule number.		

Table 21-6 Setup edit rules page of Bandwidth Management

<p>Step 6. Customize the Rule</p> <p>Enter a rule name such as web-from-WAN, select the Source IP as WAN1_ALL and Dest. IP as LAN1_ALL Besides, make sure the service is HTTP (port 80) because of this is web service. Select the action to be web-from-WAN. In this way, all inbound web traffic from WAN1 will be put into the web-from-WAN queue and scheduled out at 300kbps bandwidth. Click Apply to store the changes.</p> <p>Repeat the same procedure for the video-from-WAN class.</p>	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>ADVANCED SETTINGS > Firewall > Edit Rules > Insert</p> <p>Status Edit Rules Show Rules Attack Alert Summary</p> <p>Firewall->Edit Rules->Insert</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Insert a new WAN1-to-LAN1 Firewall rule</p> <p>Status</p> <p>Rule name: web-from-WAN</p> <p>Schedule: Always</p> <p>Condition</p> <p>Source IP: WAN1_ALL Dest. IP: LAN1_ALL</p> <p>Service: HTTP</p> <p>Action</p> <p>Forward and do not log the matched session.</p> <p style="border: 2px solid red; padding: 2px;">Forward bandwidth class: web-from-WAN</p> <p>Reverse bandwidth class: def_class</p> <p style="text-align: right;">Back Apply</p> </div>
--	---

	FIELD	DESCRIPTION	Range/Format	EXAMPLE
Status	Activate this rule	Enable this firewall rule	Enable/Disable	Enabled
	Rule name	The firewall rule name	text string	web-from-WAN
Condition	Source IP	When source IP address of incoming packets conforms the “Source IP” settings, do the “Action”.	IPv4 format	WAN1_ALL
	Dest. IP	When destination IP address of incoming packets conforms the “Dest IP/Netmask” settings, do the “Action”.	IPv4 format	LAN1_ALL
	Service	Verify if the service of packet belongs to TCP, UDP, or ICMP type.	ANY/TCP/UDP/ICMP	HTTP (80)
Action	Forward / Block the matched session	If packet is matched the rule condition, Forward or Block this matched packet?	Forward / Block	Forward
	Don't log / Log the matched session	If packet is matched the rule condition, Log or Don't log this matched packet?	log / don't log	do not log
	Forward bandwidth class	Forward the bandwidth class if any.	def_class web-from-DMZ video-from-WAN web-from-WAN	web-from-WAN
	Reverse bandwidth class	Reverse the bandwidth class if any.	def_class E-Commerce LAN_1-to-LAN_2	def_class
BUTTON		DESCRIPTION		
	Back	Back to previous configuration page.		
	Apply	Apply the settings which have been configured.		

Table 21-7 Add a new Bandwidth Management rule

Step 7. View the rules

Now we can see that there are existed two customized rules in the queue of WAN1 to LAN1 direction.

In the No. 1 rule. The DFL-1500 is configured to direct video-from-WAN packets into the video-from-WAN queue (300kbps).

In the No. 2 rule. The DFL-1500 will direct web-from-WAN packets into the web-from-WAN queue (1000kbps).

In the No. 3 rule. The other traffic will be put into the def_class queue (any available bandwidth).

ADVANCED SETTINGS > Firewall > Edit Rules

Firewall->Show Rules

Show WAN1 to LAN1 rules

Packets are top-down matched by the rules.

Item #	Name	Schedule	Source IP	Dest. IP	Service	Action	Log
1	video-from-WAN	ALWAYS	WAN1_video	LAN1_ALL	ANY	Forward	N
2	web-from-WAN	ALWAYS	WAN1_ALL	LAN1_ALL	HTTP	Forward	N

Page 1/1

Step 8. Add DMZ to LAN1 rule

Here we will add another rule (web from DMZ). Select DMZ1 to LAN1 direction.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > Firewall > Edit Rules

Firewall->Show Rules

Show DMZ1 to LAN1 rules

Packets are top-down matched by the rules.

Item #	Name	Schedule	Source IP	Dest. IP	Service	Action	Log
--------	------	----------	-----------	----------	---------	--------	-----

Page 1/1

Step 9. Customize the rule

Setup the web-from-DMZ rule. Here we select DMZ1_ALL / LAN1_ALL in the Source IP / Dest. IP field. It means that if the packets come from DMZ and targeted LAN1 region, we do not need to care about its source / dest IP. If the packets request for web traffic (source port HTTP 80), it will be put into the web-from-DMZ queue by DFL-1500 bandwidth management feature.

Not: In the Action region, the web-from-DMZ class was edited in the previous Step 4 before.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > Firewall > Edit Rules > Insert

Firewall->Edit Rules->Insert

Insert a new DMZ1-to-LAN1 Firewall rule

Status

Rule name: web-from-DMZ

Schedule: Always

Condition

Source IP: DMZ1_ALL Dest. IP: LAN1_ALL

Service: HTTP

Action

Forward and do not log the matched session.

Forward bandwidth class: web-from-DMZ

Reverse bandwidth class: def_class

Back Apply

Step 10. View the results

We can see the result of our settings at the DMZ-to-LAN rule direction.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > Firewall > Edit Rules

Firewall->Show Rules

Show DMZ1 to LAN1 rules

Packets are top-down matched by the rules.

Item #	Name	Schedule	Source IP	Dest. IP	Service	Action	Log
1	web-from-DMZ	ALWAYS	DMZ1_ALL	LAN1_ALL	HTTP	Forward	N

Page 1/1

21.4.2 Outbound Traffic Management

Step 1. Enable Bandwidth Management

Check the **Enable Bandwidth Management** checkbox, click the **Apply**.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > Bandwidth Mgt. > Status

Status **Edit Actions**

Enable Bandwidth Management

The bandwidth manager protects mission critical traffic when it is enabled.
Step 1. Enable the bandwidth management system.
Step 2. Edit actions to be imposed on each link.
Step 3. Choose the preferred action during editing firewall rules.

Reset Bandwidth Management

Apply

Step 2. Setup the WAN1 Link

Select **ANY** to WAN1 to setup traffic that will be transmitted by the WAN1 interface. Enter the WAN1 interface bandwidth as 1544kbps. Click the **Apply** button to enforce the WAN1 link bandwidth to be 1544kbps. Then click **Create Sub-Class** to partition the default class.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > Bandwidth Mgt. > Edit Actions

Status **Edit Actions**

Bandwidth Management->Edit Actions

Edit ANY to WAN1 classes

WAN1 Interface Bandwidth: 1544 kbps Apply

Item	#	Active	Name	Borrow	Bandwidth
1	Y	WAN1 Interface			1544 kbps
2	Y	(100%) root_class		N	1544 kbps
3	Y	(5%) ct1_class		Y	77 kbps
4	Y	(95%) def_class		Y	1466 kbps

Page 1/1

Prev. Page Next Page

Create Sub-class Edit Delete

Step 3. Partition into Classes

Create a sub-class named **LAN_1-to-LAN_2** from the default class. Enter 40% in the bandwidth field, uncheck the **Borrow** button, and click **Apply**. Select the default class and click the **Create Sub-Class** to create another sub-class named **E-Commerce** from the default class. Enter 20% in the bandwidth field, check the **Borrow** button and click **Apply**. Now there are two actions under the default action. They are separately **LAN_1-to-LAN_2** and **E-Commerce** class as the right diagram.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > Bandwidth Mgt. > Edit Actions > Create Sub-Class

Status **Edit Actions**

Bandwidth Management->Edit Actions

Edit ANY to WAN1 classes

WAN1 Interface Bandwidth: 1544 kbps Apply

Item	#	Active	Name	Borrow	Bandwidth
1	Y	WAN1 Interface			1544 kbps
2	Y	(100%) root_class		N	1544 kbps
3	Y	(5%) ct1_class		Y	77 kbps
4	Y	(95%) def_class		Y	1466 kbps
5	Y	(20%) E-Commerce		Y	308 kbps
6	Y	(40%) LAN_1-to-LAN_2		N	617 kbps

Page 1/1

Prev. Page Next Page

Create Sub-class Edit Delete

Step 4. Setup LAN1-to-WAN1 Rules

Select LAN1 to WAN1 to display the rules. There is a pre-defined rule that matches all traffic into the default class. Click Insert to insert a rule before the default rule.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > Firewall > Edit Rules

Firewall->Edit Rules

Edit LAN1 to WAN1 rules

Default action for this packet direction: Forward Log Apply

Packets are top-down matched by the rules.

Item	Status	Condition	Action				
#	Name	Schedule	Source IP	Dest. IP	Service	Action	Log

Page 1/1

Prev. Page Next Page Move Page: 1

Insert Edit Delete Move Before: 1

Step 5. Customize the Rules

Enter a rule name such as outVPN, select the Source IP as LAN1_outVPN (192.168.40.0) and Dest. IP as WAN1_outVPN (192.168.88.0). Select the action to be LAN_1-to-LAN_2. In this way, all outbound packets to the LAN_2 area will be put into the LAN_1-to-LAN_2 queue and scheduled out at 617 kbps bandwidth. Click Apply to store the changes.

Repeat the same procedure for the outE-Commerce rule.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > Firewall > Edit Rules > Insert

Firewall->Edit Rules->Insert

Insert a new LAN1-to-WAN1 Firewall rule

Status

Rule name: outVPN

Schedule: Always

Condition

Source IP: LAN1_outVPN Dest. IP: WAN1_outVPN

Service: ANY

Action

Forward and do not log the matched session.

Forward bandwidth class: LAN_1-to-LAN_2

Reverse bandwidth class: def_class

Back Apply

Step 6. View the rules

The DFL-1500 is configured to direct outE-Commerce matched packets into the E-Commerce queue (308 kbps), outVPN matched packets into the LAN_1-to-LAN_2 queue (617 kbps). Here we reserve 40% WAN1 bandwidth for the LAN_1 to LAN_2 VPN data, to guarantee the data communication between VPN. The other traffic will be put into the def_class queue (any available bandwidth).

ADVANCED SETTINGS > Firewall > Edit Rules

Firewall->Show Rules

Show LAN1 to WAN1 rules

Packets are top-down matched by the rules.

Item	Status	Condition	Action				
#	Name	Schedule	Source IP	Dest. IP	Service	Action	Log
1	outE-Commerce	ALWAYS	LAN1_ALL	WAN_Ecommerce	ANY	Forward	N
2	outVPN	ALWAYS	LAN1_outVPN	WAN1_outVPN	ANY	Forward	N

Page 1/1

Prev. Page Next Page Move Page: 1

Chapter 22

High Availability

This chapter introduces High Availability and explains how to implement it.

22.1 Demands

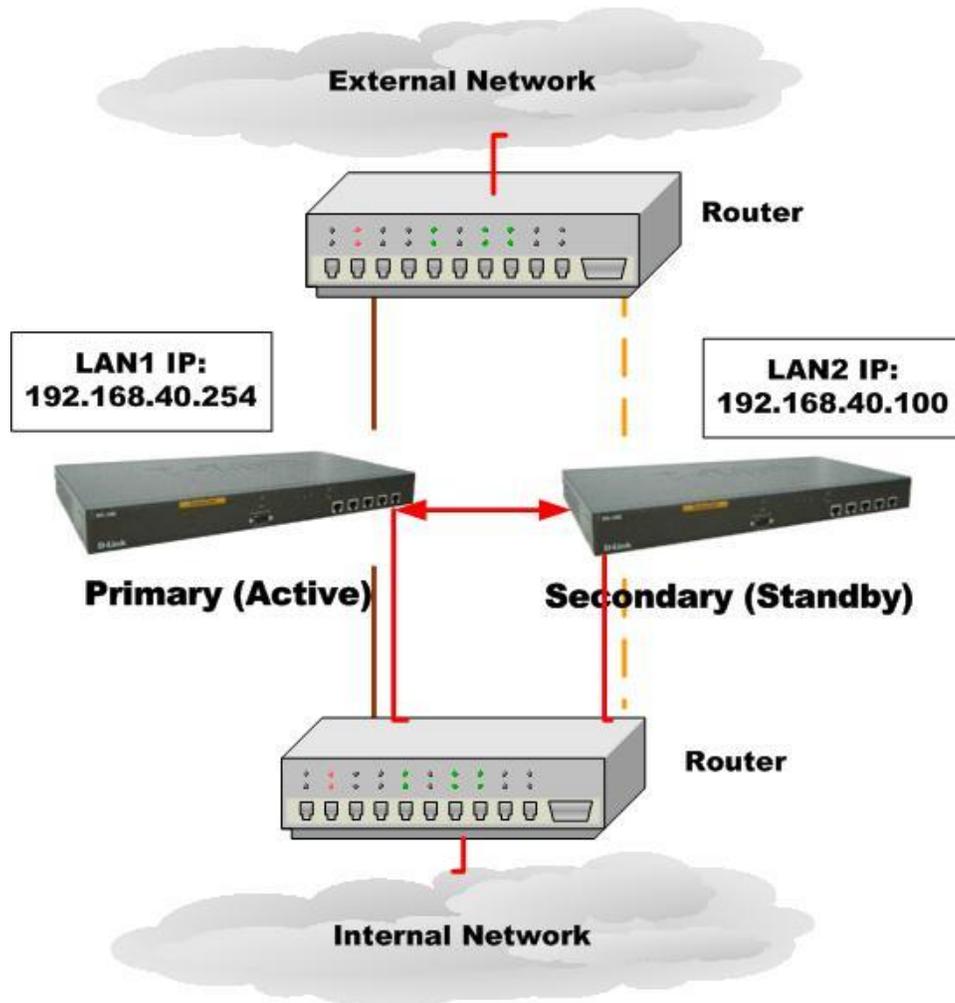


Figure 22-1 Use High Availability mechanism to let network connection continually

1. As the above Figure 22-1 illustrates, your company is afraid that the firewall may be crashed someday, so it needs a backup system to let the network connection continually. High Availability makes it possible to let the network in your company operate smoothly.

22.2 Objectives

1. Prepare two DFL-1500 devices, and then let one as a primary firewall and the other as a secondary firewall. While the primary firewall is crashed, you can replace it with secondary firewall.

22.3 Methods

There are five steps to configure High Availability feature.

- Step 1. You have to setup two DFL-1500 devices first. Remember to set the Action Mode for primary device as `Active` mode and secondary device as `Standby` mode.
- Step 2. When the primary device crashed, the secondary device will replace it within 30 seconds while detecting by “ping” command.
- Step 3. The secondary device will immediately load the configuration under primary device, and then change its action mode to `Active` mode.
- Step 4. After rebooting, the primary device will automatically change its action mode to `Standby` mode if it detects the secondary device in `active` mode already.
- Step 5. If both of primary and secondary devices crashed simultaneously, the one which reboots faster will action as `Active` mode, and the other will be in `Standby` mode.

22.4 Steps

22.4.1 Setup High Availability

Step 1. Enable High Availability

Check the `Enable High Availability` checkbox. Select the Action Mode as `Active` if it is the primary device and `Standby` for the secondary device. And then configure the other HA device. Select which interface to connect to. Enter IP Address and Login Password.

Note that you have to configure the Secondary device as `Standby` mode and the IP address/Login Password of the Primary device, so High Availability can work then.

ADVANCED SETTINGS > High Availability > Status

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	Range/Format	EXAMPLE
Enable High Availability	Enable High Availability feature of DFL-1500	Enable/Disable	Enabled
Action Mode	Specify which device is Active or Standby.	Active/Standby	Active
Connect to interface	The interface which the HA devices will connect to.	LAN1/LAN2/DMZ	LAN1
IP Address	The IP address of the other HA device.	IPv4 format	192.168.40.100
BUTTON	DESCRIPTION		
Apply	Apply the settings which have been configured.		

Table 22-1 Setup status page of High Availability

Step 2. Show the result in Web

After you apply the High Availability feature, the Primary device will show the message to tell you that “Sync configuration file successfully, the device will rebooting now and stay in standby mode.”

ADVANCED SETTINGS > High Availability > Status



Step 3. Show the message in Console

When Primary device crashed, the messages like the right diagram will appear to tell you that this device will be in Standby mode after rebooting.

```
login: syncing disks... done
rebooting...

>> NetOS Loader (i386), V1.5 (Mon Jul 19 18:54:37 CST 2004)
Press <TAB> to prompt - starting in 0
1453120+10732452+2439344 [159+113696+989881=0xe27a8c
NetOS Ver2.000 (WALL) #0: Thu Sep 9 05:46:41 CST 2004
total memory = 255 MB
avail memory = 235 MB
cpu0: Intel Celeron (686-class), 1202.79 MHz, id 0x6b4
ASIC IPsec Enabled
Ethernet address 00:80:c8:50:fb:87
Ethernet address 00:80:c8:50:fb:88
Ethernet address 00:80:c8:50:fb:89
Ethernet address 00:80:c8:50:fb:8a
Ethernet address 00:80:c8:50:fb:8b
IPsec: Initialized Security Association Processing.
Software Serial Number: [39686122395656264007]
Installing Modules ... done.
Startup High Availability : Standby mode.

NetOS/i386 (HA: Standby mode) (tty00)

login:
```

Step 4. Check the Device status

You can see the status of the device in Standby mode here.

```
Welcome to DFL-1500 VPN/Firewall Router

DFL-1500> en
DFL-1500# sys st
=====
System Name:
Firmware Version: NetOS Ver2.000 (WALL) #0: Thu Sep 9 05:46:41 CST 2004
Software Serial Number: 39686122395656264007
=====
Operation Mode: NAT/Router
Default Gateway:
Primary DNS:      Secondary DNS:
=====
Port Interface IP Address      Netmask      Status Type
-----
1
2
3
4
5
=====

11:24AM up 1 min, 0 users, load averages: 1.10, 0.37, 0.14
DFL-1500# _
```

Part VIII

System Maintenance

Chapter 23

System Status

23.1 Demands

1. Since we have finished the settings of DFL-1500, we need to gather the device information quickly. Then we can have a overview of the system status.

23.2 Objectives

1. We can know the current situation easily through an integrated interface.

23.3 Methods

1. Through DEVICE STATUS > System Status path, we can get the needed information.

23.4 Steps

Step 1. System Status

Here we can see the system information (include system name, firmware version), and the full list of each port settings.

DEVICE STATUS > System Status > System Status

System Status	Network Status	CPU & Memory	DHCP Table	Routing Table	Active Sessions	Top20 Sessions	IPSec Sessions
System Name: DFL-1500.dlink.com Firmware Version: NetOS Ver2.000 (WALL) #0: Fri Sep 3 17:35:25 CST 2004 Software Serial Number: 60623576436830003320							
Operation Mode: NAT/Router Default gateway: 61.2.1.6 Primary DNS: 168.95.1.1 Secondary DNS:							
Port1: WAN1 (Static IP)[Default] IP Address: 61.2.1.1 Subnet Mask: 255.255.255.248							
Port2: WAN2 (Not initialized) IP Address: not set							
Port3: DMZ1 IP Address: 10.1.1.254 Subnet Mask: 255.255.255.0							
Port4: LAN1 IP Address: 192.168.40.254 Subnet Mask: 255.255.255.0							
Port5: LAN2 IP Address: 192.168.2.254 Subnet Mask: 255.255.255.0							

Step 2. Network Status

We can know the port status here, whether the port is up or down, and view the amount of the transmitted packets or received packets in each port.

DEVICE STATUS > System Status > Network Status

System Status	Network Status	CPU & Memory	DHCP Table	Routing Table	Active Sessions	Top20 Sessions	IPSec Sessions																																										
<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Port</th> <th>Status</th> <th>TxPkts</th> <th>RxPkts</th> <th>Collisions</th> <th>Tx B/s</th> <th>Rx B/s</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1. WAN1</td> <td>UP</td> <td>1</td> <td>108</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>55</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2. WAN2</td> <td>DOWN</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3. DMZ1</td> <td>UP</td> <td>1</td> <td>10</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4. LAN1</td> <td>UP</td> <td>1270</td> <td>1317</td> <td>0</td> <td>2150</td> <td>349</td> </tr> <tr> <td>5. LAN2</td> <td>UP</td> <td>1</td> <td>10</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>								Port	Status	TxPkts	RxPkts	Collisions	Tx B/s	Rx B/s	1. WAN1	UP	1	108	0	0	55	2. WAN2	DOWN	0	0	0	0	0	3. DMZ1	UP	1	10	0	0	0	4. LAN1	UP	1270	1317	0	2150	349	5. LAN2	UP	1	10	0	0	0
Port	Status	TxPkts	RxPkts	Collisions	Tx B/s	Rx B/s																																											
1. WAN1	UP	1	108	0	0	55																																											
2. WAN2	DOWN	0	0	0	0	0																																											
3. DMZ1	UP	1	10	0	0	0																																											
4. LAN1	UP	1270	1317	0	2150	349																																											
5. LAN2	UP	1	10	0	0	0																																											

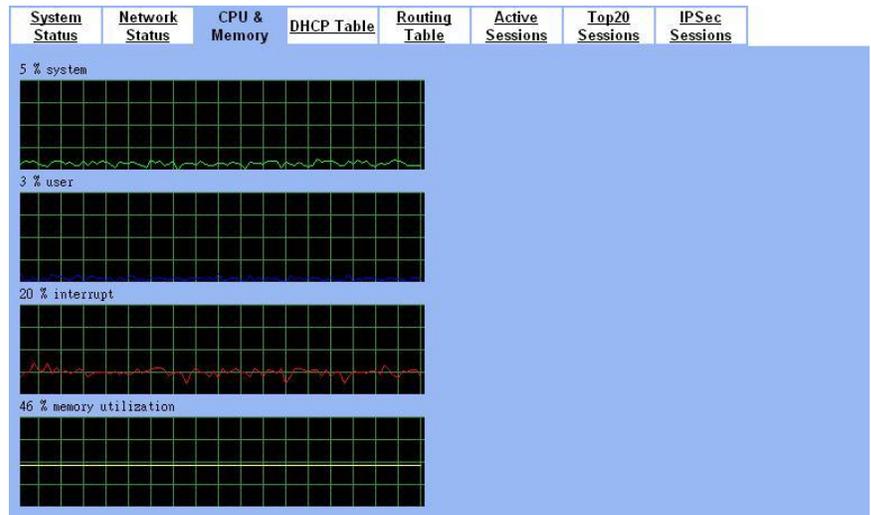
Step 3. CPU & Memory

We can know the device information (include system, user, interrupt and memory utilization) through the graphic interface.

Note: If you can not view the graphic correctly, the situation may result from that you don't install the java virtual machine (JVM) onto your browser. Simply go to the following link, <http://java.sun.com/j2se/1.4.2/download.html>.

And then, download the Java 2 Platform, Standard Edition (JRE) to your platform (ex. windows). After installing JRE properly, you will see the CPU & Memory graphic as right side.

DEVICE STATUS > System Status > CPU & Memory



Step 4. DHCP Table

Through the DHCP Table, we can recognize which IP has been allocated by the DHCP server. And know which pc (MAC address) has been leased this IP address.

DEVICE STATUS > System Status > DHCP Table

#	IP Address	Hostname	MAC Address	Leases Expires
1	192.168.1.20	pc101	00:40:F4:84:89:4D	2024-05-29 16:02:32

Refresh

Step 5. Routing Table

Click the Routing Table to see the routing table information of DFL-1500.

DEVICE STATUS > System Status > Routing Table

#	Type	Destination/Netmask	Gateway	Interface
1	Net	10.1.1.0/255.255.255.0	10.1.1.254	DMZ1
2	Net	61.2.1.0/255.255.255.248	61.2.1.1	WAN1
3	Net	192.168.2.0/255.255.255.0	192.168.2.254	LAN2
4	Net	192.168.40.0/255.255.255.0	192.168.40.254	LAN1

Step 6. Active Sessions

Click the Active Sessions to see all the current sessions of DFL-1500. The Active Sessions include all the outbound and inbound sessions.

DEVICE STATUS > System Status > Active Sessions

System Status	Network Status	CPU & Memory	DHCP Table	Routing Table	Active Sessions	Top20 Sessions	IPSec Sessions
---------------	----------------	--------------	------------	---------------	-----------------	----------------	----------------

Refresh Clear

Current Sessions: 9 Page 1/1

Item	Local Client			Remote Server		Traffic Statistics
	#	IP Address	Port	IP Address	Port	Bytes
1	1	192.168.17.188	6222	211.78.4.48	80	1116
2	2	192.168.17.188	6221	211.78.4.48	80	1106
3	3	192.168.17.188	6220	211.78.4.48	80	3438
4	4	192.168.17.188	6219	211.78.4.48	80	5636
5	5	192.168.17.188	6218	211.78.4.1	80	7922
6	6	192.168.17.188	6217	211.78.4.70	80	2080
7	7	192.168.17.188	6216	211.78.4.1	80	130086
8	8	203.69.36.107	0	140.112.20.199	0	124
9	9	192.168.17.105	1023	168.95.1.1	53	465

Current Sessions: 9 Page 1/1

Prev. Page Next Page Move Page 1

Step 7. Top20 Sessions

Click the Top20 Sessions to see the front-20 sessions of transmitted bytes amount. These front-20 sessions were sorted by the amount of transmitted bytes.

DEVICE STATUS > System Status > Top20 Sessions

System Status	Network Status	CPU & Memory	DHCP Table	Routing Table	Active Sessions	Top20 Sessions	IPSec Sessions
---------------	----------------	--------------	------------	---------------	-----------------	----------------	----------------

Refresh Clear

Current Sessions: 15 Page 1/1

Item	Local Client			Remote Server		Traffic Statistics
	#	IP Address	Port	IP Address	Port	Bytes
1	1	192.168.17.188	6250	211.79.36.245	80	80800
2	2	192.168.17.188	6251	211.79.36.245	80	80720
3	3	192.168.17.55	3712	207.46.107.194	1863	66068
4	4	192.168.17.55	3743	202.39.162.230	80	57116
5	5	192.168.17.55	3713	65.54.183.198	443	8654
6	6	192.168.17.55	3714	61.219.38.89	80	1828
7	7	192.168.17.55	3011	168.95.1.1	53	1772
8	8	192.168.17.213	3844	10.1.1.1	110	898
9	9	203.69.36.107	0	140.112.20.199	0	744
10	10	10.1.1.1	514	192.168.17.190	514	714
11	11	192.168.17.105	1023	168.95.1.1	53	465
12	12	168.95.192.156	32941	10.1.1.1	53	367
13	13	192.168.17.141	1929	10.1.1.1	53	351
14	14	168.95.192.144	33184	10.1.1.1	53	307
15	15	168.95.192.158	32972	10.1.1.1	53	307

Current Sessions: 15 Page 1/1

Prev. Page Next Page Move Page 1

Step 8. IPSec Sessions

If we use the IPSec to establish VPN with other device, then we can view the IPSec tunnel information in this page.

DEVICE STATUS > System Status > IPSec Sessions

System Status	Network Status	CPU & Memory	DHCP Table	Routing Table	Active Sessions	Top20 Sessions	IPSec Sessions
---------------	----------------	--------------	------------	---------------	-----------------	----------------	----------------

Refresh Delete Item Delete All

Current Sessions: 1 Page 1/1

Item	End Points		Created Date	Traffic Statistics (Bytes)	
#	My IP Address	Peer's IP Address	Day/Time/Year	Transmitted	Received
1	140.113.1.1	140.113.1.200	May 29 15:38:02 2004	10154848	29186080

Current Sessions: 1 Page 1/1

Prev. Page Next Page Move Page 1/1

Chapter 24

Log System

24.1 Demands

1. The System Administrator wants to know all the actions of administration in the past. So it can avoid illegal system administration.
2. The System Administrator needs to check the logs of VPN, IDS, Firewall, and Content Filter everyday. But he / she feels inconvenient to verify the DFL-1500 logs. He / She hopes to decrease the checking procedure.

24.2 Objectives

1. The System Administrator wants to know all actions of administration in the past.
2. The System administrator would like to view the daily log report of DFL-1500.

24.3 Methods

1. Through tracking the system logs, you can distinguish which administrated action is valid or not.
2. Use the syslog server to receive mail, or edit the “Mail Logs” page of DFL-1500. Make the log mailed out automatically every periodic time.

24.4 Steps

24.4.1 System Logs

<p>Step 1. View System Logs</p> <p>All the system administrated actions will be log in this page.</p> <p>For the detailed information of System Logs, please refer Appendix C.</p>	<p>DEVICE STATUS > System Logs</p>  <p>The screenshot shows a web interface for viewing system logs. At the top, there's a breadcrumb 'DEVICE STATUS > System Logs'. Below it, a 'System Access Logs' section contains a table with columns: No., Time, Source-IP, and Access-Info. The table lists 10 log entries from 2004-04-27. Below the table are navigation buttons: 'Download To Local', 'Prev. Page', 'Refresh', 'Clear', 'Next Page', and a dropdown menu for 'List 10' and 'Per Page Page: 1/12'.</p>
---	---

FIELD	DESCRIPTION
NO	system logs sequence number
Time	The time which is occurred by the specified system event.
Source-IP	A type of the specified system events.
Access--Info	The description of the system log. Include Component Type, Log ID, Log Description and Event ID (optional).

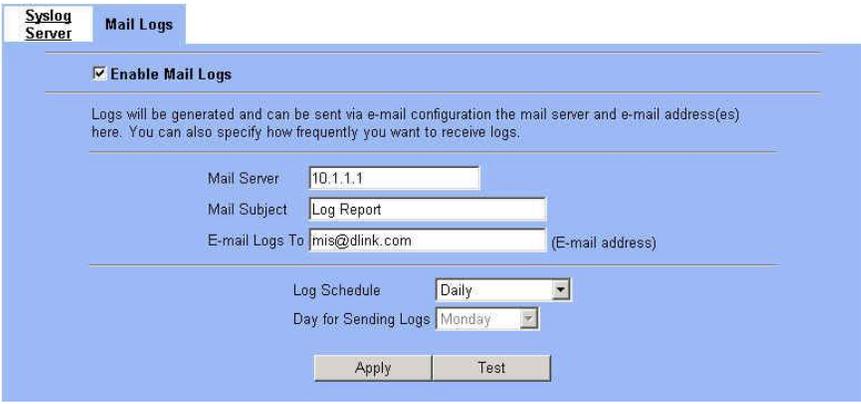
Table 24-1 System log description

24.4.2 Syslog & Mail log

<p>Step 1. Setup Syslog Server</p> <p>Setup Syslog Server by checking the Enable Syslog Server. It will let DFL-1500 send logs to the Syslog Server specified in the “Syslog Server IP Address” field.</p> <p>Notice: If the logs were sent out to the syslog server, they will still keep a copy in the DFL-1500.</p>	<p>DEVICE STATUS > Log Config > Syslog Server</p> 
--	---

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	EXAMPLE
Enable Syslog Server	Enable the Syslog Server feature of DFL-1500	Enabled
Syslog Server IP Address	The IP Address which Syslog Server located.	10.1.1.20
BUTTON	DESCRIPTION	
Apply	Apply the configuration in this page	
Reset	Restore the original configuration in this page	

Table 24-2 Setup the Syslog Server

<p>Step 2. Setup Mail Log method</p> <p>Fill in the IP address of the Mail Server and Mail Subject. Also fill your E-mail address for receiving logs. Select the preferred Log Schedule to mail out logs. Click the Apply button to finish the settings.</p> <p>Notice: If the logs were sent out to the mail server, they will be deleted by the DFL-1500.</p>	<p>DEVICE STATUS > Log Config > Mail Logs</p> 
---	---

FIELD	DESCRIPTION	EXAMPLE
Enable Mail Logs	Enable the Mail Logs Server feature of DFL-1500	Enabled
Mail Server	The IP Address of Mail Server which will send out the logs.	10.1.1.1
Mail Subject	The subject of log mail	Log Report
E-mail Logs To	E-Mail address of receiver	<u>mis@dlink.com</u>
Log Schedule	The schedule which the mail logs will be sent out.	Daily
Day for Sending Logs	When selecting Weekly in the “Log Schedule” field, we have to choose which day the mail logs will be sent out in the “Day for Sending Logs” field.	Monday

BUTTON	DESCRIPTION
Apply	Apply the configuration in this page
Test	test the mail logs configuration in this page

Table 24-3 Setup the Mail Logs

Chapter 25

System Maintenance

This chapter introduces how to do system maintenance.

25.1 Demands

1. DFL-1500 is designed to provide upgradeable firmware and database to meet the upcoming dynamics of the Internet. New features, new attack signatures, new forbidden URLs, and new virus definitions require timely updates to the DFL-1500. This chapter introduces how to upgrade your system with TFTP and Web UI respectively.
2. Sometimes one may want to reset the firmware to factory default due to loss of password, firmware corrupted, configuration corrupted. Since DFL-1500 does not have a reset button to prevent careless pressing of it, factory default has to be set with web GUI or console terminal. Of course, when you lose the password, you have to use CLI only because you can never enter the web GUI with the lost password.
3. Another issue is that after setup the DFL-1500 properly, we might want to keep the current configuration to avoid the unknown accident. Then we can recover the original state from the previous reserved configuration.

25.2 Steps for TFTP Upgrade

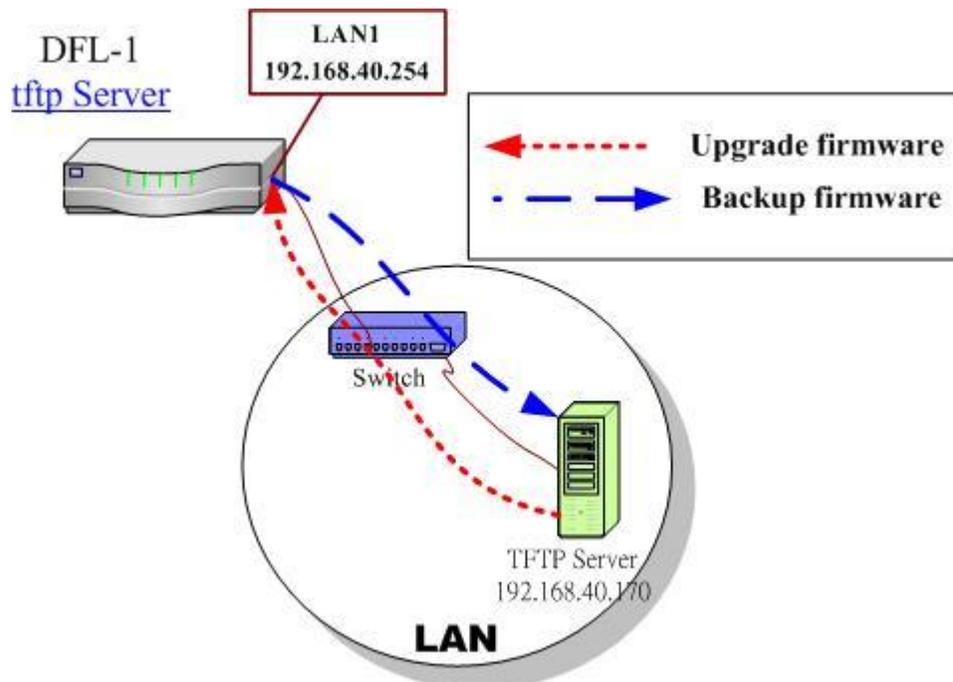


Figure 25-1 Upgrade/Backup firmware from TFTP server

<p>Step 1. Setup TFTP server</p> <p>Place the TFTP server TftpServer in the c:\ directory and double click to run it. Place all bin files in the c:\ as well. Set the PC to be 192.168.40.x to be in the same subnet with the DFL-1500's LAN1. Login to DFL-1500's console. Enter en to enter privileged mode. Configure the LAN1 address so that the DFL-1500 can connect to the TFTP server. The CLI command to configure LAN1 interface is ip ifconfig INTF3 192.168.40.254 255.255.255.0.</p>	<pre>NetOS/i386 (DFL-1500) (tty00) login: admin Password: Welcome to DFL-1500 VPN/Firewall Router! DFL-1500> en DFL-1500# ip ifconfig INTF3 192.168.40.254 255.255.255.0 DFL-1500#</pre>
<p>Step 2. Upgrade firmware</p> <p>Enter IP tftp upgrade image 192.168.40.x DFL-1500-<ver>.bin. After this procedure, DFL-1500 device will reboot automatically.</p> <p>Notice: if you want to preserve the previous configuration, add the "preserve" keyword to the end.</p> <p>Refer Appendix A for the details.</p>	<pre>DFL-1500# ip tftp upgrade image DFL-1500-1.530p5-ALL.bin 192.168.1.170 preserve Fetching from 192.168.40.170 for DFL-1500-1.530p5-ALL.bin tftp> tftp> Verbose mode on. tftp> getting from 192.168.40.170:DFL-1500-1.530p5-ALL.bin to DFL-1500-1.530p5-ALL.bin [octet]</pre>
<p>Step 3. Check if OK</p> <p>Check whether the system status is working properly or not.</p>	<pre>DFL-1500# sys st ===== System Name: DFL-1500 Firmware Version: NetOS Ver1.530 (DLINK) #0: Sun Apr 25 02:26:26 CST 2004 ===== Default Gateway: 61.2.1.6 Primary DNS: 168.95.1.1 Secondary DNS: Default WAN Link (Gateway/DNS): WAN1 ===== Port Interface IP Address Netmask Status Type ----- 1 WAN1 61.2.1.1 255.255.255.248 UP (Static IP) 2 WAN2 DOWN (Not initialized) 3 DMZ1 10.1.1.254 255.255.255.0 UP 4 LAN1 192.168.40.254 255.255.255.0 UP 5 LAN2 192.168.2.254 255.255.255.0 UP ===== 4:55PM up 33 mins, 1 user, load averages: 0.26, 0.26, 0.19 DFL-1500# _</pre>

25.3 Steps for Firmware upgrade from Web GUI

<p>Step 1. Download the newest firmware from web site</p> <p>If a new firmware issued, we can download it from the web site (fwupdate.dlinktw.com.tw) to the local computer.</p>	<p>Firmware upgrade site : http://fwupdate.dlinktw.com.tw/</p>
---	--

Step 2. Upgrade firmware

In the System Tools / Firmware Upgrade page. Select the path of firmware through **Browse** button, and check the **Preserve Saved Configurations** to reserve original settings. Click the **Upload** button to upgrade firmware.

SYSTEM TOOLS > Firmware Upgrade > Firmware Upgrade

Firmware Upgrade

Caution!! Upgrading firmware with browser takes at least 2 minute and may fail occasionally due to users' interrupt. We suggest firmware upgrade with the CLI command 'ip tftp upgrade image FILENAME X.X.X.X' to a TFTP server.

To upgrade the internal system firmware, browse to the location of the binary (.BIN) upgrade file and click **UPLOAD**. Download BIN files from <http://fwupdate.dlinktw.com.tw>. In some cases, you may need to reconfigure the system after upgrading.

File Path:

Preserve Saved Configurations

25.4 Steps for Database Update from Web GUI

Step 3. Update database manually

If a new firmware issued, we can download it by clicking the **Update** button. Then we will see the database version shown on the left side.

Update

Status :

URL database : v1.40808 [2004/08/09 16:17]

IDS signatures: v1.40809 [2004/08/09 16:17]

Auto Update :

Update Center

Update Schedule On

Auto URL update

Auto IDS update

Step 4. Auto Update

We can also update database automatically. Fill the database server in the **Update Center** field. Choose what date/time we would like to update the database, and then check which databases we would like to update. Click **Apply** button to finish the settings.

SYSTEM TOOLS > Firmware Upgrade > Firmware Upgrade

Update

Status :

URL database : v1.40808 [2004/08/09 16:17]

IDS signatures: v1.40809 [2004/08/09 16:17]

Auto Update :

Update Center

Update Schedule On

Auto URL update

Auto IDS update

25.5 Steps for Factory Reset

25.5.1 Step for factory reset under web GUI

<p>Step 1. Factory reset</p> <p>In the Web GUI mode. Follow the path of right side. We can make DFL-1500 configuration restored to the factory defaults with simply clicking the <code>Apply</code> button.</p> <p>Warning: Be careful to use this function. It will make all your present configurations disappear. And the configuration will restore to the factory default.</p>	<p>SYSTEM TOOLS > System Utilities > Factory Reset</p> 
--	--

25.5.2 Step for NORMAL factory reset

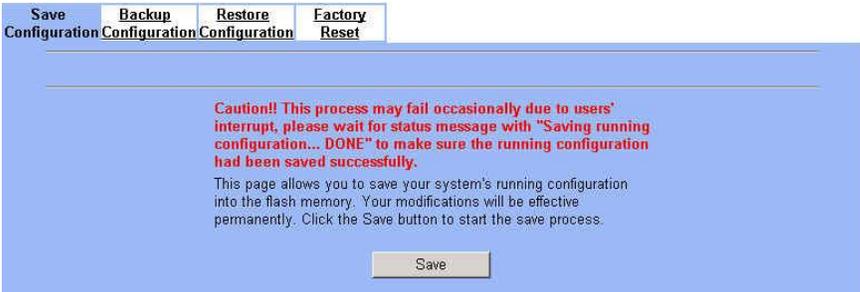
<p>Step 1. Factory reset</p> <p>In the CLI mode. Enter <code>sys resetconf</code> now to reset the firmware to factory default. Then the system will reboot automatically.</p>	<pre>NetOS/i386 (DFL-1500) (tty00) login: admin Password: Welcome to DFL-1500 VPN/Firewall Router DFL-1500> en DFL-1500# sys resetconf now Resetting Configuration to default... DONE System will reboot now syncing disks... done rebooting...</pre>
---	--

25.5.3 Steps for EMERGENT factory reset

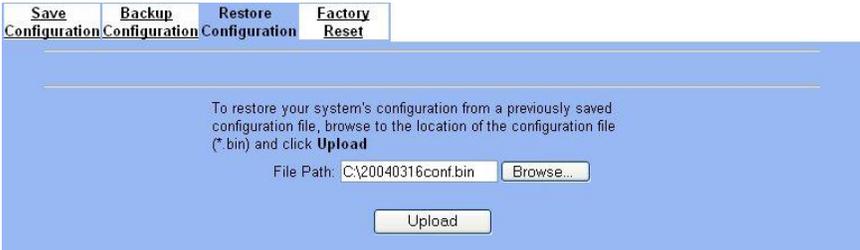
<p>Step 1. Enter the boot loader</p> <p>If the original firmware is damaged, you may need to recover the firmware with the factory default. Press <code><tab></code> or <code><space></code> during the 2-second countdown process.</p>	<pre>>> NetOS Loader (i386), V1.5 (Fri Feb 20 10:25:11 CST 2004) Press <TAB> to prompt - starting in 0 Type "boot rescue" to load safe-mode kernel to (1) rescue corrupted firmware (2) reset password for admin type "?" or "help" for help. ></pre>
--	--

<p>Step 2. Enter the Safe Mode</p> <p>Enter <code>boot rescue</code> to enter the emergency kernel. In this kernel, you can use <code>ftpp</code> to fetch another firmware to install, or reset the configuration to default even though you lost the password.</p>	<pre>> boot rescue 651354+7888404+127584=0x84528c NetOS Ver1.529 (RESCUE) #1: Wed Apr 7 00:54:55 CST 2004 cpu0: Intel (null) Celeron (686-class), 1202.85 MHz total memory = 255 MB avail memory = 228 MB Ethernet address 00:90:0b:02:eb:ac, 10/100 Mb/s Ethernet address 00:90:0b:02:eb:ad, 10/100 Mb/s Ethernet address 00:90:0b:02:eb:ae, 10/100 Mb/s Ethernet address 00:90:0b:02:eb:af, 10/100 Mb/s Ethernet address 00:90:0b:02:eb:b0, 10/100 Mb/s wd0: drive supports PIO mode 4 Software Serial Number: I606235764368287223201</pre> <p>Tips: Type "?" anytime when you need helps. Tips: To recover from corrupted firmware, setup IP address and use <code>ftpp</code> to install the new firmware.</p> <pre>DFL-1500> _</pre>
<p>Step 3. Factory reset</p> <p>Enter <code>sys resetconf now</code> to reset the firmware to factory default. Then system will reboot automatically.</p>	<pre>DFL-1500> en DFL-1500# sys resetconf now System will reboot now syncing disks... done rebooting...</pre>

25.6 Save the current configuration

<p>Step 1. Backup the current configuration</p> <p>After finishing the settings of DFL-1500, be sure to Press the <code>Save</code> button in this page to keep the running configuration.</p>	<p>SYSTEM TOOLS > System Utilities > Save Configuration</p> 
---	--

25.7 Steps for Backup / Restore Configurations

<p>Step 1. Backup the current configuration</p> <p>Before backup your current configuration, make sure you have saved your current configurations as described in Section 25.6. Then select page in the page of /System Tools /System Utilities /Backup Configurations, click <code>Backup</code> button to backup configuration file to local disk.</p>	<p>SYSTEM TOOLS > System Utilities > Backup Configuration</p> 
<p>Step 2. Restore the previous saving configuration</p> <p>In the page of System Tools / System Utilities / Restore Configuration, click the <code>Browse</code> button to select configuration file path first, and then click <code>Upload</code> button to restore configuration.</p>	<p>SYSTEM TOOLS > System Utilities > Restore Configuration</p> 

25.8 Steps for Reset password

<p>Step 1. Enter the boot loader</p> <p>If you forget the password, you can use the following way to reset the password. Press <tab> or <space> during the 2-second countdown process.</p>	<pre>>> NetOS Loader (i386), V1.5 (Fri Feb 20 10:25:11 CST 2004) Press <TAB> to prompt - starting in 0 Type "boot rescue" to load safe-mode kernel to (1) rescue corrupted firmware (2) reset password for admin type "?" or "help" for help. ></pre>
<p>Step 2. Get the Initial Key</p> <p>Enter <code>boot -I</code> command as right side. When screen shows "Enter Initial Key", you can consult with your local technical supporter to get the Initial Key. You will need to tell the local technical supporter all the MAC address value. Then you will get the Initial Key. To reset admin password.</p>	<pre>> boot -I 998681+10753736+329772 [74+85936+64524]=0xbaba08 NetOS Ver1.529 (DLINK) #0: Wed Apr 7 00:38:02 CST 2004 cpu0: Intel (null) Celeron (686-class), 1202.84 MHz total memory = 255 MB avail memory = 224 MB Ethernet address 00:90:0b:02:eb:ac, 10/100 Mb/s Ethernet address 00:90:0b:02:eb:ad, 10/100 Mb/s Ethernet address 00:90:0b:02:eb:ae, 10/100 Mb/s Ethernet address 00:90:0b:02:eb:af, 10/100 Mb/s Ethernet address 00:90:0b:02:eb:b0, 10/100 Mb/s wd0: drive supports PIO mode 4 IPSec: Initialized Security Association Processing. Enter Initial Key:</pre>

Appendix

Appendix A

Command Line Interface (CLI)

You can configure the DFL-1500 through the web interface (http/https) for the most time. Besides you can use another method, console/ssh/telnet method to configure the DFL-1500 in the emergency. This is known as the Command Line Interface (CLI). By the way of CLI commands, you can effectively set the IP addresses, restore factory reset, reboot/shutdown system etc. Here we will give you a complete list to configure the DFL-1500 using the CLI commands.

A.1 Enable the port of DFL-1500

If you prefer to use CLI commands, you can use it through console/ssh/telnet methods. For using ssh/telnet feature, you must enable the remote management first. Enable the specified port, so that you can login from the configured port.

<p>Step 1. Enable remote management / TELNET</p> <p>Check the selected port located in the telnet function. And customize the server port which is listened by telnet service.</p>	<p>SYSTEM Tools > Remote Mgt. > TELNET</p> 
<p>Step 2. Enable remote management / SSH</p> <p>Check the selected port located in the ssh function. And customize the server port which is listened by ssh service.</p>	<p>SYSTEM Tools > Remote Mgt. > SSH</p> 

A.2 CLI commands list (Normal Mode)

Subsequently, we can use the console/ssh/telnet to connect the DFL-1500. After logging the system successfully, we can use the CLI commands to configure DFL-1500. The complete CLI commands are described as follows.

Non-privileged mode

Main commands	Sub commands	Example	Command description
?		?	Show the help menu
enable (en)		enable	Turn on privileged mode command
exit (ex)		exit	Exit command shell
ip			Configure IP related settings
	ping	ip ping 202.11.22.33	Send ICMP echo request messages
	tracert	ip tracert 202.11.22.33	Trace route to destination address or hostname
sys			Configure system parameters

	status (st)	sys status	Show system and network status
	version (ver)	sys version	Show DFL-1500 firmware version

Table A-1 Non-privileged mode of normal mode

Note: If you don't know what parameter is followed by the commands, just type "?" following the command. Ex "ip?". It will show all the valid suffix parameters from "ip".

Privileged mode

Main commands	Sub commands	Example	Command description
?		?	Show the help menu
disable (dis)		disable	Turn off privileged mode command
exit (ex)		exit	Exit command shell
ip			Configure IP related settings
	arp	ip arp status	Show the ip/MAC mapping table
	dns	ip dns query www.yam.com.tw	Show the IP address of the www.yam.com.tw .
	ifconfig	ip ifconfig INTF1 192.168.1.100 255.255.255.0	Configure the ip address of each port
	ping	ip ping 202.11.22.33	Send ICMP echo request messages
	tftp upgrade/backup	ip tftp upgrade image <FILENAME> 192.168.1.170.	Upgrade/Backup firmware/configuration from/to tftp server. About the full description, please refer to Section A-3.
	traceroute	ip traceroute 202.11.22.33	Trace route to destination address or hostname.
sys			Configure system parameters
	halt	sys halt now	Shutdown system
	password	sys password	Change administrator password
	reboot	sys reboot now	Reboot system
	resetconf	sys resetconf now	Reset system configuration to default settings
	saveconf (sa)	sys saveconf	Save running configuration
	status (st)	sys status	Show system and network status
	tcpdump (tc)	sys tcpdump INTF0 host 10.1.1.1	Capture the information of specified packets which pass through the indicated interface.
	version (ver)	sys version	Show DFL-1500 firmware version

Table A-2 Privileged mode of normal mode

The Full tftp commands are described in the following Table A-3.

Prefix command	2th command	3th command	Postfix command	Example	Command description
ip tftp	upgrade	config	FILENAME WORD	ip tftp upgrade config conf-0101 192.168.1.170	Upgrade configuration file image from tftp server.
		image	FILENAME WORD (preserve)	ip tftp upgrade image <FILENAME> 192.168.1.170 preserve	Upgrade system image from tftp server.
	backup	config	WORD	ip tftp backup config 192.168.1.170	Backup configuration file image to tftp server.
		image	WORD	ip tftp backup image 192.168.1.170	Backup system image to tftp server.

Table A-3 ip tftp commands description

In the Postfix command, the meanings of keywords are listed here.

WORD: tftp server IP address

FILENAME: Upgrade configuration file image name

(preserve): string “preserve”, this is optional

A.3 CLI commands list (Rescue Mode)

If the original firmware was damaged by some accidents, you may need to recover it with the factory reset process in the rescue mode. Boot the DFL-1500 and press <tab> or <space> during the 2-second countdown process. You may refer Section 25.5.3 for details.

Non-privileged mode

Main commands	Sub commands	Example	Command description
?		?	Show the help menu
enable (en)		enable	Turn on privileged mode command
exit (ex)		exit	Exit command shell
ip			Configure IP related settings
	ping	ip ping 202.11.22.33	Send ICMP messages
sys			Configure system parameters
	status (st)	sys status	Show the mode name and firmware version.
	version (ver)	sys version	Show the firmware version

Table A-4 Non-privileged mode of rescue mode

Note: If you don't know what parameter is followed by the commands, just type “?” following the command. Ex “ip?”. It will show all the valid suffix parameters from “ip”.

Privileged mode

Main commands	Sub commands	Example	Command description
?		?	Show the help menu
disable (dis)		disable	Turn off privileged mode command
exit (ex)		exit	Exit command shell
ip			Configure IP related settings
	arp	ip arp status	Show the ip/MAC mapping table
	dns	ip dns query <u>www.yam.com.tw</u>	Show the IP address of the <u>www.yam.com.tw</u> .
	ifconfig	ip ifconfig INTF1 192.168.1.100 255.255.255.0	Configure the ip address of each port
	ping	ip ping 202.11.22.33	Send ICMP echo request messages
	tftp	ip tftp upgrade image <FILENAME> 192.168.1.170.	Upgrade firmware from tftp server.
sys			Configure system parameters
	halt	sys halt now	Shutdown system
	reboot	sys reboot now	Reboot system
	resetconf	sys resetconf now	Reset system configuration to default settings
	status (st)	sys status	Show the mode name and firmware version.
	version (ver)	sys version	Show the firmware version

Table A-5 Privileged mode CLI commands

Appendix B

Trouble Shooting

1. If the power LED of DFL-1500 is off when I turn on the power?

Ans : Check the connection between the power adapter and DFL-1500 power cord. If this problem still exists, contact with your sales vendor.

2. How can I configure the DFL-1500 if I forget the admin password of the DFL-1500 ?

Ans : You can gather all the MAC addresses values of DFL-1500, and contact the local technical supporter. Then we will give you an initial key. Please refer to the Section 25.8 described to reset the admin password.

3. I can't access DFL-1500 via the console port ?

Ans : Check the console line and make sure it is connected between your computer serial port and DFL-1500 Diagnostic RS-232 port. Notice whether the terminal software parameter setting as follows. No parity, 8 data bits, 1 stop bit, baud rate 9600 bps. The terminal type is VT100.

4. I can't ping DFL-1500 WAN1 interface successfully ? Why ?

Ans : Follow below items to check if ready or not

- a. Check Basic Setup > WAN Settings > WAN1 status fields. Verify whether any data is correctly.
 - b. Check Device Status > System Status > Network Status WAN1 status is "UP". If the status is "DOWN", check if the network line is connectionless ?
 - c. Check System Tools > Remote Mgt. > MISC > WAN1. Verify if WAN1 port checkbox is enabled. The default enabled port is only LAN port.
 - d. Check whether virtual server rule (Dest. IP : WAN1 IP address, port : 1~65535) exists or not. If existing any virtual server rule like this type, it will make all the connections from WAN1 port outside relay to another server. Actually what you have pinged is another server, not DFL-1500.
 - e. Check whether NAT One-to-One(bidirectional) rule (Translated Src IP : WAN1 IP address, port : 1~65535) exists or not. If existing any virtual server rule like this type, it will make all the connections from WAN1 port outside relay to another server. Actually what you have pinged is another server, not DFL-1500.
 - f. If all the above items have checked, try to change a new network line. This is almost resulting from the network line problem. Please neglect the LED status, because it will confuse your judgment sometimes.
5. I have already set the WAN1 ip address of DFL-1500 the same subnet with my pc, but I can't use https to login DFL-1500 via WAN1 port from my pc all the time, why ?

Ans :

- a. Be sure that you can ping the WAN1 port, please check the procedure as question 4 description.
 - b. Make sure that the WAN1 IP address of DFL-1500 is not duplicated with other existent IP address. You can take off the network line connected on the WAN1 port. Then try to ping the IP address which setup on the WAN1 port. If it is still successful, the IP address which setup on the WAN1 port is duplicated with the existent IP address.
 - c. Notice that you must check System Tools > Remote Mgt. > HTTPS > WAN1. The default enabled port is only LAN port.
6. I can't build the VPN – IPSec connection with another device at the another side all the time, why ?

Ans : Please make sure if you follow the setting method as follows.

- a. Check your IPSec Setting. Please refer to the settings in the Section 11.4- Step 3.
- b. Make sure if you have already added a WAN to LAN policy in the Advanced Settings/Firewall to let the IPSec packets pass through the DFL-1500. (The default value from WAN to LAN is block.).

When you add a Firewall rule, the Source IP and Netmask are the IP address , PrefixLen/Subnet Mask in the pages of the Remote Address Type. And the Dest IP and Netmask are the IP Address , PrefixLen/Subnet Mask in the pages of the Local Address Type.

The following Figure B-1, Figure B-2 indicated the DFL_A IPSec and Firewall setting. The Figure B-3, Figure B-4 indicated the opposite side DFL_B IPSec and Firewall setting. When you configure an IPSec policy, please be sure to add a rule to let the packets of the IPSec pass from WAN to LAN. For the IP address of firewall rules, please refer to the Figure B-2, Figure B-4.

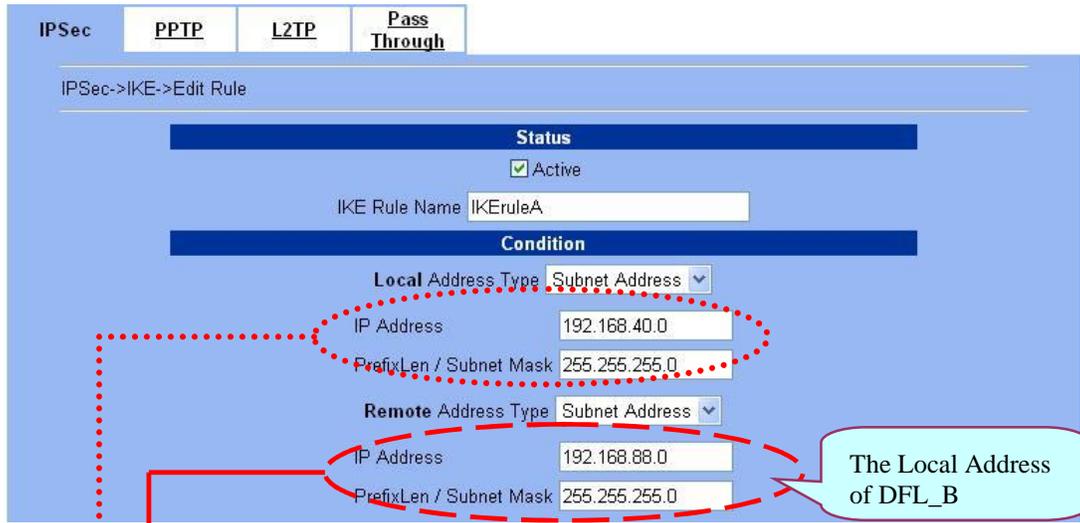


Figure B-1 DFL_A - Inset a new IPSec policy

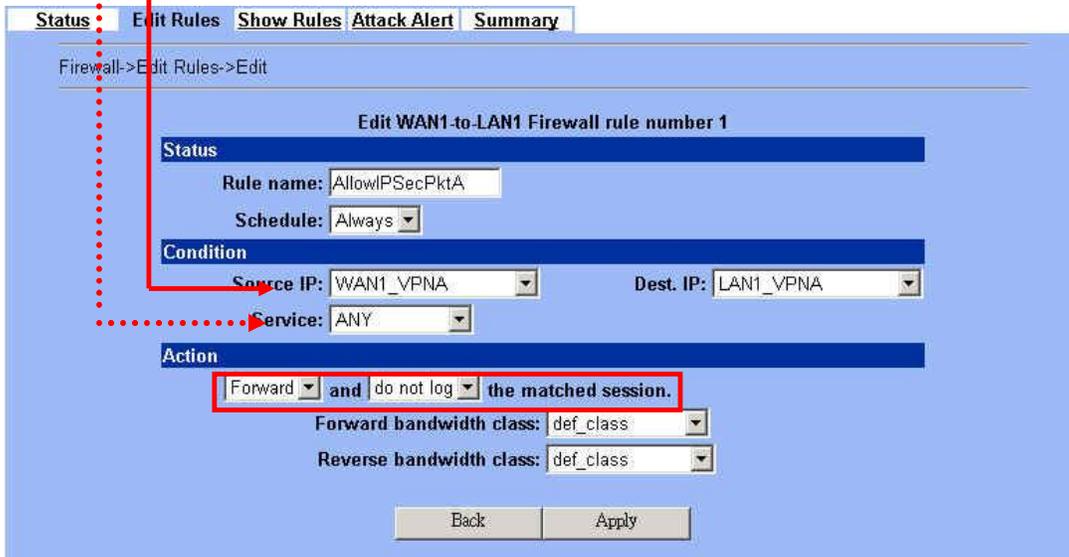


Figure B-2 DFL_A - Insert a new firewall rule in WAN to LAN

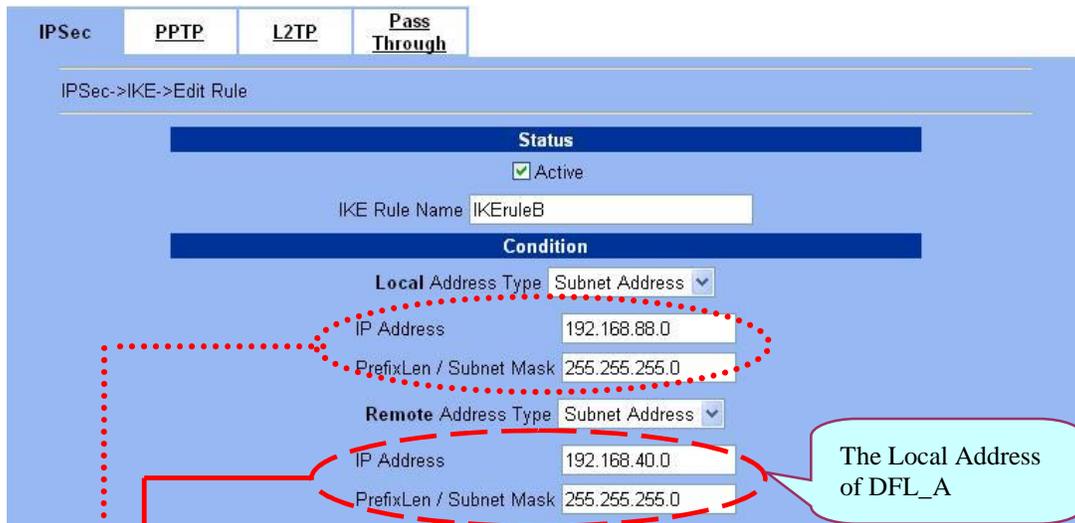


Figure B-3 DFL_B - Inset a new IPsec policy

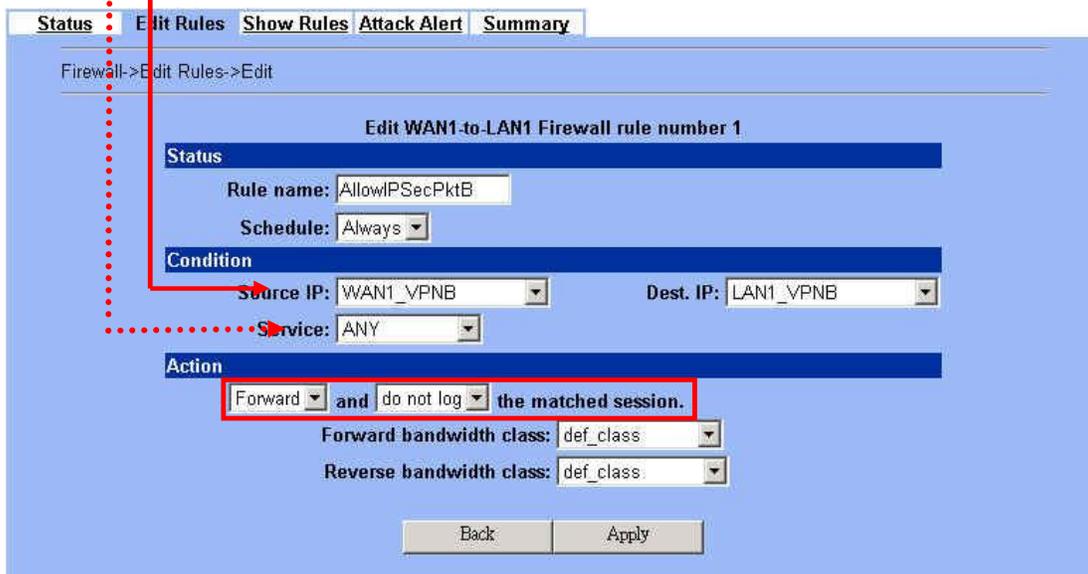


Figure B-4 DFL_B - Insert a new firewall rule in WAN to LAN

7. Why the Source-IP field of System Logs is blank?

Ans: One reason is that you may enter Host Name and following by a space like “DFL-1500 “. And enter the Domain Name string like “dlink.com” in the firmware version 1.391B. Then the System Name will present as “DFL-1500 .dlink.com”. After upgrading firmware to upper version (ex. 1.50R). It will appear blank in the Source-IP field of System Logs.

8. When I ping the internet host from LAN/DMZ. I can’t always finish the ping successfully. Sometimes it is work. But sometimes it fails to ping the outside host.

Ans: This may cause there are more than one host in the LAN/DMZ pingging the same host at the same time. If one host (Lan-A) is pingging internet host A(ex. 140.106.100.1), and at the same time, Lan-B is also pingging 140.106.100.1. Then the pingging action of the Lan-A and Lan-B may fail. But when each host (Lan-A or Lan-B) is finish pingging, the other host can continue the pingging action.

9. While I am upgrading firmware from local disk, the download is not complete but the network has been disconnected. What will it happen in such situation?

Ans : Under this circumstance, the DFL-1500 will automatically reboot and all configurations will still remain as before.

10. While I am upgrading firmware from local disk, the download is complete. After md5 checks, the screen appears “Upgrading kernel image”. What will it happen if the power is off suddenly?

Ans : Almost all the cases will not cause firmware fail. The DFL-1500 will automatically reboot and all configurations will still remain as before. But sometimes it will make firmware fail. If the firmware fails, DFL-1500 will automatically enter rescue mode when it reboots. You may need to do the factory reset, and then restore your original configuration to DFL-1500. Refer to the factory reset procedure of DFL-1500 as Section 25.5. About restoring configuration procedure, please refer to Section 25.7.

11. While finishing the Content Filters > Web Filter settings, if I try to use browser to test, why does not the web page result match with the web filter configuration?

Ans : Be sure that you have cleaned all the file cache in the browser, and try to connect the internet web server. If the web page result still does not match with the web filter configuration, you may close your browser and reopen it.

12. While finishing the edition of DFL-1500 settings and pressing apply button, the LAN/DMZ to WAN network connection (telnet, ssh, ftp, msn..) fails, why?

Ans : This is a normal situation. When you finish the following settings, all the active network connection will be disconnected. So, you must reconnect it again.

- a. SYSTEM TOOLS > Remote Mgt.
- b. ADVANCED SETTINGS > VPN Settings > IPSec
- c. ADVANCED SETTINGS > VPN Settings > PPTP > Client
- d. ADVANCED SETTINGS > VPN Settings > Pass Through
- e. ADVANCED SETTINGS > NAT

Appendix C

System Log Syntax

In the DFL-1500, all the administration action will be logged by the system. You can refer all your management process through System log (DEVICE STATUS > System Logs > System Access Logs). Besides, all the system log descriptions are following the same syntax format.

In the below diagram, you can view the example of system log. The amplified system log example can be divided into 4 parts. The first part is **Component type**, second part is **Log ID**, third part is **log description** and final part is **Event ID**. When you applied each setting in the DFL-1500, you had been issued an Event. So the same Event ID may have many different Log IDs because you may change different settings in the same apply action. The Event ID is a sequence number. It means that the same Log ID would not be assigned the same Event ID every time.

So if you apply any button while setting DFL-1500 every time, an “Event” will occur immediately. And the “Event” will be displayed in the System log.

The screenshot shows a table of system logs with columns: No., Time, Source-IP, and Access-Info. The highlighted entry is:

No.	Time	Source-IP	Access-Info
1	2004-05-14 11:08:39	192.168.17.170	LOG: [L07] logfile system_log.txt cleanup.
2	2004-05-14 11:08:45	192.168.17.170	SYSTEM: [S9] LAN1 IP Address Assignment: 192.168.1.254/255.255.255.0, ... MORE
3	2004-05-14 11:08:46	192.168.17.170	SYSTEM: [S4] Enable DHCP server on LAN1 by admin (192.168.17.179:443)... MORE
4	2004-05-14 11:08:46	192.168.17.170	SYSTEM: [S4] IP Pool Starting Address: 192.168.1.1, Pool Size: 20. Eve... MORE
5	2004-05-14 11:08:46	192.168.17.170	SYSTEM: [S43] NAT: rule for Basic-LAN1 added .
6	2004-05-14 11:08:46	192.168.17.170	SYSTEM: [S43] NAT: rule for Basic-LAN2 added .
7	2004-05-14 11:08:46	192.168.17.170	SYSTEM: [S43] NAT: rule for Basic-DMZ1 added .
8	2004-05-14 11:08:47	192.168.17.170	ROUTING: [R3] LAN1: Routing Protocol: None. EventID:247

The highlighted entry is broken down as follows:

ROUTING : [R3] LAN1: Routing Protocol: None. EventID:247
 Component type : Log ID : Log description : Event ID

Figure D-1 All the system log descriptions are following the same format as above

In the following table, we list all the system logs for reference.

Component type	Log ID	Log description	Example
AUTH	A01	User Login	AUTH: [A01] admin login success (192.168.17.102:443).
			AUTH: [A01] admin login fail, miss password (192.168.17.102:443).
			AUTH: [A01] admin login fail, configuration is locked by administrator from Console (192.168.17.102:443).
			AUTH: [A01] admin login fail, configuration is locked by another user from 192.168.17.100 (192.168.17.102:443).
	A02	User Logout	AUTH: [A02] admin logout (192.168.17.102:443).

Appendix C

	A03	Change Password	AUTH: [A03] admin change system password (192.168.17.102:443).
BANDWIDTH	B01	Enable/Disable Bandwidth Management	BANDWIDTH: [B01] Enable bandwidth management by admin (192.168.17.100:443).
			BANDWIDTH: [B01] Disable bandwidth management by admin (192.168.17.100:443).
			BANDWIDTH: [B01] WAN1 Disable bandwidth management with PPPoE connection.
CONTENT	C01	Web filter categories configuration updated	CONTENT: [C01] Web filter categories configuration update by admin (192.168.17.100:443). EID=6
	C02	Web filter added trusted host	CONTENT: [C02] Web filter add trusted host by admin (192.168.17.100:443). EID=6
	C03	Web filter deleted trust host	CONTENT: [C03] Web filter deleted trust host by admin (192.168.17.100:443). EID=6
	C04	Web filter added forbidden domain	CONTENT: [C04] Web filter added forbidden domain by admin (192.168.17.100:443). EID=7
	C05	Web filter deleted forbidden domain	CONTENT: [C05] Web filter deleted forbidden domain by admin (192.168.17.100:443). EID=8
	C06	Enable web-filter access control	CONTENT: [C06] Enable web-filter access by admin (192.168.17.100:443). EID=9
	C07	Disable web-filter access control	CONTENT: [C07] Disable web-filter access control by admin (192.168.17.100:443). EID=10
	C08	Web filter URL keyword added	CONTENT: [C08] Web filter URL keyword added by admin (192.168.17.100:443). EID=11
	C09	Web filter URL keyword deleted	CONTENT: [C09] Web filter URL keyword deleted by admin (192.168.17.100:443). EID=12
	C10	Enable web filter url matching	CONTENT: [C10] Enable web filter url matching by admin (192.168.17.100:443). EID=13
	C11	Disable web filter url matching	CONTENT: [C11] Disable web filter url matching by admin (192.168.17.100:443). EID=14
	C12	Updated web filter exempt zone configuration	CONTENT: [C12] Updated web filter exempt zone configuration by admin (192.168.17.100:443). EID=15
	C13	Web filter exempt zone added range	CONTENT: [C13] web filter exempt zone added range from 140.126.1.1 to 140.126.100.255 by admin (192.168.17.100:443). EID=16
	C14	Updated ftp filter exempt zone configuration	CONTENT: [C14] Updated ftp filter exempt zone configuration by admin (192.168.17.100:443). EID=17
	C15	FTP filter exempt zone added range	CONTENT: [C15] FTP filter exempt zone added range from 140.126.1.1 to 140.126.255.255 by admin (192.168.17.100:443). EID=18
	C16	Updated ftp filter blocked file configuration	CONTENT: [C16] Updated ftp filter blocked file configuration by admin (192.168.17.100:443). EID=19
	C17	FTP Filter blocking list updated	CONTENT: [C17] FTP Filter blocking list updated by admin (192.168.17.100:443). EID=20

	C18	Web filter keyword added	CONTENT: [C18] Web filter keyword added by admin (192.168.17.100:443). EID=21
	C19	Web filter keyword deleted	CONTENT: [C19] Web filter keyword deleted by admin (192.168.17.100:443). EID=22
	C20	Enable web filter keyword matching	CONTENT: [C20] Enable web filter keyword matching by admin (192.168.17.100:443). EID=23
	C21	Disable web filter keyword matching	CONTENT: [C21] Disable web filter keyword matching by admin (192.168.17.100:443). EID=24
	C22	Updated POP3 filter exempt zone configuration	CONTENT: [C22] Updated POP3 filter exempt zone configuration by admin (192.168.17.100:443). EID=25
	C23	POP3 filter exempt zone added range	CONTENT: [C23] POP3 filter exempt zone added range from 140.126.1.1 to 140.126.1.255 by admin (192.168.17.100:443). EID=26
	C24	Enable POP3 filter	CONTENT: [C24] Enable POP3 filter by admin (192.168.17.100:443). EID=27
	C25	Disable POP3 filter	CONTENT: [C25] Disable POP3 filter by admin (192.168.17.100:443). EID=28
	C26	POP3 Filter blocking list updated	CONTENT: [C26] POP3 Filter blocking list updated by admin (192.168.17.100:443). EID=29
	C27	Updated SMTP exempt zone configuration	CONTENT: [C27] Updated SMTP exempt zone configuration by admin (192.168.17.100:443). EID=30
	C28	SMTP filter exempt zone added range from	CONTENT: [C28] SMTP filter exempt zone added range from by admin (192.168.17.100:443). EID=31
	C29	Enable SMTP filter	CONTENT: [C29] Enable SMTP filter by admin (192.168.17.100:443). EID=32
	C30	Disable SMTP filter	CONTENT: [C30] Disable SMTP filter by admin (192.168.17.100:443). EID=33
	C31	SMTP Filter blocking list updated	CONTENT: [C31] SMTP Filter blocking list updated by admin (192.168.17.100:443). EID=34
	C32	Enable SMTP AntiVirus	CONTENT: [C32] Enable SMTP AntiVirus by admin (192.168.17.100:443). EID=35
	C33	Disable SMTP AntiVirus	CONTENT: [C33] Disable SMTP AntiVirus by admin (192.168.17.100:443). EID=36
	C34	AntiVirus module cannot download signatures	CONTENT: [C34] AntiVirus: cannot download signatures by admin (192.168.17.100:443). EID=37
	C35	AntiVirus signatures updated	CONTENT: [C35] AntiVirus signatures updated by admin (192.168.17.100:443). EID=38
	C36	Enable WEB filter	CONTENT: [C36] Enable WEB filter by admin (192.168.17.100:443). EID=39
	C37	Disable WEB filter	CONTENT: [C37] Disable WEB filter by admin (192.168.17.100:443). EID=40
FIREWALL	F01	Enable/Disable Firewall	FIREWALL: [F01] Activated firewall by admin (192.168.17.102:443). FIREWALL: [F01] Deactivated firewall by admin (192.168.17.102:443).

Appendix C

	F02	Edit Firewall Rules	
	F03	Attack Alert Setup	FIREWALL: [F03] Enable Alert when attack detected by admin (192.168.17.102:443). FIREWALL: [F03] Disable Alert when attack detected by admin (192.168.17.102:443).
	F04	Reload Firewall Rules	FIREWALL: [F04] WAN1 Reload all NAT/Firewall rules for new WAN IP
LOG	L01	Logfile is Full	LOG: [L01] logfile is full.
	L02	Mail Log	LOG: [L02] mail logfile to tom@hotmail.com .
	L03	Remote Syslog Server offline	
	L04	Enable/Disable Syslog Forward to Remote Syslog Server	LOG: [L04] Enable syslog server at 192.168.17.100 by admin (192.168.17.102:443). LOG: [L04] Disable syslog server by admin (192.168.17.102:443).
	L05	Enable/Disable Mail Log	LOG: [L05] Enable mail logs to tom@hotmail.com by admin (192.168.17.102:443). LOG: [L05] Disable mail logs by admin (192.168.17.102:443).
	L06	Send Mail Log	LOG: [L06] mail logfile to tom@hotmail.com
	L07	Log Cleanup	LOG: [L07] logfile is cleanup.
	L08	Mail Log Configuration Update	LOG: [L08] Mail configuration updated by admin (192.168.17.102:443).
	L09	Log Half-Clean	LOG: [L09] logfile half-clean.
NAT	N01	Set NAT Mode	NAT: [N01] Disable WAN NAT feature.
	N02	NAT Rules	NAT: [N02]
	N03	Virtual Server	
ROUTING	R01	Static Route	
	R02	Policy Route	
	R03	Changing Routing Protocol	ROUTING: [R03]
		OSPF Area ID	ROUTING: [R3] WAN1: OSPF Area ID = 15. EventID:15
		Routing Protocol: OSPF	ROUTING: [R3] WAN1: Routing Protocol: OSPF. EventID:15
		Routing Protocol: RIPv2/In+Out	ROUTING: [R3] WAN1: Routing Protocol: RIPv2/In+Out. EventID:15
		Routing Protocol: RIPv1/In+Out	ROUTING: [R3] WAN1: Routing Protocol: RIPv1/In+Out. EventID:15
		Routing Protocol: RIPv2/In	ROUTING: [R3] WAN1: Routing Protocol: RIPv2/In. EventID:15
		Routing Protocol: RIPv1/In	ROUTING: [R3] WAN1: Routing Protocol: RIPv1/In. EventID:15
Routing Protocol: None	ROUTING: [R3] WAN1: Routing Protocol: None. EventID:15		
SYSTEM	S01	Wall Startup	SYSTEM: [S01] Wall Startup.
	S02	Wall Shutdown	SYSTEM: [S02] Wall Shutdown.

S03	Interface Configuration	SYSTEM: [S03] WAN1: IP Address Assignment = Get IP Automatically by admin (192.168.17.102:443). SYSTEM: [S03] WAN1: IP Address Assignment = Fixed IP Address by admin (192.168.17.102:443). SYSTEM: [S03] WAN1: Got PPPoE IP Address F63/255.255.255.0.
S04	Startup/Shutdown DHCP Server	SYSTEM: [S04] Enable DHCP server on LAN1 by admin (192.168.17.102:443) SYSTEM: [S04] Disable DHCP server on LAN1.
S05	Startup/Shutdown HTTP Server	SYSTEM: [S05] HTTP started. SYSTEM: [S05] HTTP stopped.
S06	Startup/Shutdown HTTPS Server	SYSTEM: [S06] HTTPS started.
S07	Startup TELNET Server	
S08	Set Interface IP Address	SYSTEM: [S08] WAN1: IP Address: 192.168.17.102/255.255.255.0. (192.168.17.102:443).
S09	IP Alias	SYSTEM: [S09] LAN1: Add IP address alias 192.168.1.2/255.255.255.0 by admin (192.168.17.102:443). SYSTEM: [S09] LAN1: Delete IP address alias 192.168.1.2/255.255.255.0 by admin (192.168.17.102:443). SYSTEM: [S09] LAN1: Change IP address alias 192.168.1.2/255.255.255.0 to 192.168.1.3/255.255.255.0 by admin (192.168.17.102:443).
S10	Set Host Name	SYSTEM: [S10] HostName:DFL-1500, set by admin (192.168.17.102:443).
S11	Set Domain Name	SYSTEM: [S11] Domain Name: dlink.com, set by admin (192.168.17.102:443).
S12	Enable/Disable DDNS	SYSTEM: [S12] Enable Dynamic DNS with hostname wall.adsltdns.org on WAN1 by admin (192.168.17.102:443). SYSTEM: [S12] Disable Dynamic DNS on WAN1 by admin (192.168.17.102:443).
S13	Enable/Disable DNS Proxy	SYSTEM: [S13] Enable DNS proxy by admin (192.168.17.102:443). SYSTEM: [S13] Disable DNS proxy by admin (192.168.17.102:443).
S14	Enable/Disable DHCP Relay	SYSTEM: [S14] Enable DHCP relay by admin (192.168.17.102:443). SYSTEM: [S14] Disable DHCP relay by admin (192.168.17.102:443).
S15	Set Date/Time	SYSTEM: [S15] System time update with NTP server tock.usno.navy.mil, set by admin (192.168.17.102:443). SYSTEM: [S15] System time update to 2003-10-10 13:33:25, set by admin (192.168.17.102:443).
S16	Set System Auto Timeout Lifetime	SYSTEM: [S16] System auto timeout changed to 45 minutes by admin (192.168.17.102:443).

Appendix C

	S17	Interface PORTS Configuration (WAN/LAN/DMZ)	
	S18	Backup Configuration	SYSTEM: [S18] Backup configuration file by admin (192.168.17.102:443).
	S19	Restore Configuration	SYSTEM: [S19] Restore configuration file by admin (192.168.17.102:443).
	S20	Factory Reset	SYSTEM: [S20] Factory Reset to default settings by admin (192.168.17.102:443)
	S21	Firmware Upgrade	SYSTEM: [S21] Firmware upgraded by admin (192.168.17.102:443)
	S22	Setup TELNET Server	
	S23	Setup SSH Server	
	S24	Setup WWW Server	
	S25	Setup HTTPS Server	
	S26	Setup SNMP Server	
	S27	MISC Setup	
	S28	Enable/Disable SNMP	SYSTEM: [S28] Enable SNMP by admin (192.168.17.104:443) SYSTEM: [S28] System Location: Building-A. SYSTEM: [S28] Contact Info: +886-2-28826262. SYSTEM: [S28] Disable SNMP.
	S29	Configure SNMP server	
	S30	File System Full	
	S31	Update remote management settings.	SYSTEM: [S31] Update remote management TELNET Server settings by admin (192.168.17.102:443).
	S32	Set Gateway	SYSTEM: [S32] WAN1: Gateway IP: 192.167.17.254 SYSTEM: [S32] WAN1: Got PPPoE Gateway IP 210.58.28.91.
	S33	Set DNS IP Address	SYSTEM: [S33] WAN1: Clear DNS IP Address. SYSTEM: [S33] WAN1: DNS IP Address: 168.95.1.1. SYSTEM: [S33] WAN1: Get DNS Automatically.
	S34	Syslog Reload	SYSTEM: [S34] Syslogd stop. SYSTEM: [S34] Syslogd start. SYSTEM: [S34] Syslogd restart.
	S35	Enable/Disable Ipmon	SYSTEM: [S35] Enable Ipmon. SYSTEM: [S35] Disable Ipmon.
	S36	System Checksum Update	
	S37	Disable Multicast Update Multicast	SYSTEM: [S37] Disable Multicast on interface WAN1
			SYSTEM: [S37] Update Multicast on interface WAN1 to xxx
			SYSTEM: [S37] Update Multicast on interface WAN1 to xxx
	S38	Update WAN NAT settings	SYSTEM: [S38] Update WAN NAT settings to FULL feature
		Update WAN NAT settings	SYSTEM: [S38] Update WAN NAT settings to Basic operation

		Disable WAN NAT feature	SYSTEM: [S38] Disable WAN NAT feature
VPN	V1	Update pass-through settings	VPN: [V1] Update pass-through settings
	V2	Deactivated IPSec	VPN: [V2] Deactivated IPSec
		Activated IPSec	

Table D-1 All the System Log descriptions

Appendix D

Glossary of Terms

CF (Content Filter) –

A content filter is one or more pieces of software that work together to prevent users from viewing material found on the Internet. This process has two components.

DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol) –

Provides a framework for passing configuration information to hosts on a TCP/IP network. DHCP is based on BOOTP, adding the capability of automatic allocation of reusable network addresses and additional configuration options. DHCP captures the behavior of BOOTP relay agents, and DHCP participants can interoperate with BOOTP participants.

DHCP consists of two components: a protocol for delivering host-specific configuration parameters from a DHCP server to a host and a mechanism for allocation of network addresses to hosts.

DMZ (Demilitarized Zone) –

From the military term for an area between two opponents where fighting is prevented. DMZ Ethernets connect networks and computers controlled by different bodies. They may be external or internal. External DMZ Ethernets link regional networks with routers.

Firewall –

A device that protects and controls the connection of one network to another, for traffic both entering and leaving. Firewalls are used by companies that want to protect any network-connected server from damage (intentional or otherwise) by those who log in to it. This could be a dedicated computer equipped with security measures or it could be a software-based protection.

IPSec (IP Security) –

IPSec provides security for transmission of sensitive information over unprotected networks such as the Internet. IPSec acts at the network layer, protecting and authenticating IP packets between participating IPSec devices ("peers").

L2TP (Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol) –

Layer Two Tunneling Protocol (L2TP) is an extension of the Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol (PPTP) used by an Internet Service Provider (ISP) to enable the operation of a Virtual Private Network (VPN) over the Internet. L2TP merges the best features of two other tunneling protocols: PPTP from Microsoft and L2F from Cisco Systems. The two main components that make up L2TP are the L2TP Access Concentrator (LAC), which is the device that physically terminates a call and the L2TP Network Server (LNS), which is the device that terminates and possibly authenticates the PPP stream.

NAT (Network Address Translation) –

By the network address translation skill, we can transfer the internal network private address of DFL-1500 to the public address for the Internet usage. By this method, we can use a large amount of private addresses in the enterprise.

POP3 (Post Office Protocol 3) –

POP3 (Post Office Protocol 3) is the most recent version of a standard protocol for receiving e-mail. POP3 is a client/server protocol in which e-mail is received and held for you by your Internet server. Periodically, you (or your client e-mail receiver) check your mail-box on the server and download any mail.

PPTP (Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol) –

PPTP extends the Point to Point Protocol (PPP) standard for traditional dial-up networking. PPTP is best suited for the remote access applications of VPNs, but it also supports LAN internetworking. PPTP operates at Layer 2 of the OSI model.

OSPF (Open Shortest Path First) –

Open Shortest Path First (OSPF), is a routing protocol used to determine the correct route for packets within IP networks. It was designed by the Internet Engineering Task Force to serve as an Interior Gateway Protocol replacing RIP.

SMTP (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol) –

SMTP (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol) is a TCP/IP protocol used in sending and receiving e-mail. However, since it's limited in its ability to queue messages at the receiving end, it's usually used with one of two other protocols, POP3 or Internet Message Access Protocol, that let the user save messages in a server mailbox and download them periodically from the server.

VPN (Virtual Private Network) –

The key feature of a VPN, however, is its ability to use public networks like the Internet rather than rely on private leased lines. VPN technologies implement restricted-access networks that utilize the same cabling and routers as a public network, and they do so without sacrificing features or basic security.

Appendix E

Index

B

backup configuration	185
Bandwidth Management	159, 169
bidirectional	52, 53, 59

C

Content Filter	134
FTP Filter	149
Mail Filter	145
Web Filter	135

D

DDNS	30
DHCP	9, 12, 24, 25
DHCP Relay	30
DNS Proxy	30

F

factory reset	184
Firewall	67
firmware upgrade	182, 183

I

IDS (Intrusion Dection System)	155
--------------------------------------	-----

M

mail log	178
----------------	-----

N

NAT	48
-----------	----

P

POP3	145, 147
------------	----------

R

restore configuration	185
Routing	61
policy routing	61
static routing	61

S

SMTP	145, 146
syslog	177, 178

T

tftp upgrade	181
--------------------	-----

V

Virtual Server	14, 49, 54, 55
VPN	81
AH	83
DH	82
Encapsulation	83
ESP	83
IKE	85
IPSec	81, 85, 102, 109, 121
Key Management	82
L2TP	129
Manual Key	85
PFS	83
PPTP	125
SA(Security Association)	81
VPN	81

Appendix F

Hardware

Item	Feature	Detailed Description
1. Hardware		
1.1.1	Chassis	
1.1.1.1	Dimensions	Rack mount 1U size 146 mm (H) x 275 mm (D) x 203 mm (W)(8"*5.75"*10")
1.1.1.2	Look & feel	D-Link style
1.1.2	Key Components	
1.1.2.1	CPU	Intel Celeron 1.2G
1.1.2.2	Memory	256MB 168-P SDRAM
1.1.2.3	10/100M Ethernet MAC and PHY	Intel I82559
1.1.2.4	PCI bridge	Intel FW82801BA
1.1.2.5	Storage	Compact Flash 32MB (San Disk)
1.1.2.6	Memory control HUB	FW82815EP
1.1.2.7	Hardware monitor	Super I/O hardware monitor IT8712F-A
1.1.2.8	Security processor	Safenet 1141 (VPN accelerator board)
1.1.3	Port functions	
1.1.3.1	WAN port	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> § 2 ports for connecting to outbound WAN § RJ-45 connector § IEEE 802.3 compliance § IEEE 802.3u compliance § Support Half/Full-Duplex operations § Support backpressure at Half-Duplex operation. § IEEE 802.3x Flow Control support for Full-Duplex mode
1.1.3.2	LAN port	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> § 2 ports for connecting inbound LAN § RJ-45 connector § IEEE 802.3 compliance § IEEE 802.3u compliance § Support Half/Full-Duplex operations § Support backpressure at Half-Duplex operation. § IEEE 802.3x Flow Control support for Full-Duplex mode
2.2.3.3	DMZ port	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> § 1 port for connecting to server. § RJ-45 connector § IEEE 802.3 compliance § IEEE 802.3u compliance § Support Half/Full-Duplex operations § Support backpressure at Half-Duplex operation. § IEEE 802.3x Flow Control support for Full-Duplex mode
1.1.3.4	Console port	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> § DB-9 male connector § Asynchronous serial DTE with full modem controls
1.1.3.5	LED indication	Per Device: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Power, Off – Power Off Solid Orange – Power On

		Ethernet 10/100M Per ports: 1. Link/ACT LED Off – No Link Solid Green – Link Blinking Green – Activity
2. Power		
2.1	Power supply	AT PS, AC 90~230 V full range @ 45~63 Hz
2.2	Power dissipation	180 W
3. Environmental Specifications		
3.1	Operating Temperature	0 ~ 60°C
3.2	Storage Temperature	-25~70°C
3.3	Operating Humidity	5% - 95% non-condensing
4. EMC & Safety Certification		
4.1	EMC Approval	§ FCC class A § VCCI class A § CE class A § C-Tick class A
4.2	Safety Approval	§ UL § CSA § TUV/GS § T-mark

Appendix G

Version of Software and Firmware

DFL-1500 VPN/Firewall Router

Version of Components:

Firmware: v. 2.000

Appendix H

Customer Support

D-Link® Offices

Australia	<p>D-Link Australia 1 Giffnock Avenue, North Ryde, NSW 2113, Sydney, Australia TEL: 61-2-8899-1800 FAX: 61-2-8899-1868 TOLL FREE (Australia): 1800-177100 URL: www.dlink.com.au E-MAIL: support@dlink.com.au & info@dlink.com.au</p>
Brazil	<p>D-Link Brasil Ltda. Edificio Manoel Tabacow Hydal, Rua Tavares Cabral 102 Sala 31, 05423-030 Pinheiros, Sao Paulo, Brasil TEL: (55 11) 3094 2910 to 2920 FAX: (55 11) 3094 2921 E-MAIL: efreitas@dlink.cl</p>
Canada	<p>D-Link Canada 2180 Winston Park Drive, Oakville, Ontario, L6H 5W1 Canada TEL: 1-905-829-5033 FAX: 1-905-829-5095 TOLL FREE: 1-800-354-6522 URL: www.dlink.ca FTP: ftp.dlinknet.com E-MAIL: techsup@dlink.ca</p>
Chile	<p>D-Link South America (Sudamérica) Isidora Goyenechea 2934 Of. 702, Las Condes Fono, 2323185, Santiago, Chile, S. A. TEL: 56-2-232-3185 FAX: 56-2-232-0923 URL: www.dlink.cl E-MAIL: ccasassu@dlink.cl & tsilva@dlink.cl</p>
China	<p>D-Link China 15th Floor, Science & Technology Tower, No.11, Baishiqiao Road, Haidan District, 100081 Beijing, China TEL: 86-10-68467106 FAX: 86-10-68467110 URL: www.dlink.com.cn E-MAIL: liweii@digitalchina.com.cn</p>
Denmark	<p>D-Link Denmark Naverland Denmark, Naverland 2, DK-2600 Glostrup, Copenhagen, Denmark TEL: 45-43-969040 FAX:45-43-424347 URL: www.dlink.dk E-MAIL: info@dlink.dk</p>
Egypt	<p>D-Link Middle East 7 Assem Ebn Sabet Street, Heliopolis, Cairo, Egypt TEL: 202-245-6176 FAX: 202-245-6192 URL: www.dlink-me.com E-MAIL: support@dlink-me.com & fateen@dlink-me.com</p>
Finland	<p>D-Link Finland Pakkalankuja 7A, FIN-0150 Vantaa, Finland TEL: 358-9-2707-5080 FAX: 358-9-2707-5081 URL: www.dlink-fi.com</p>
France	<p>D-Link France Le Florilege, No. 2, Allée de la Fresnerie, 78330 Fontenay-le-Fleury, France TEL: 33-1-3023-8688 FAX: 33-1-3023-8689 URL: www.dlink-france.fr E-MAIL: info@dlink-france.fr</p>

Germany	<p>D-Link Central Europe (D-Link Deutschland GmbH) Schwalbacher Strasse 74, D-65760 Eschborn, Germany TEL: 49-6196-77990 FAX: 49-6196-7799300 URL: www.dlink.de BBS: 49-(0) 6192-971199 (analog) BBS: 49-(0) 6192-971198 (ISDN) INFO: 00800-7250-0000 (toll free) HELP: 00800-7250-4000 (toll free) REPAIR: 00800-7250-8000 E-MAIL: info@dlink.de</p>
India	<p>D-Link India Plot No.5, Bandra-Kurla Complex Rd., Off Cst Rd., Santacruz (East), Mumbai, 400 098 India TEL: 91-022-652-6696/6578/6623 FAX: 91-022-652-8914/8476 URL: www.dlink-india.com & www.dlink.co.in E-MAIL: service@dlink.india.com & tushars@dlink-india.com</p>
Italy	<p>D-Link Mediterraneo Srl/D-Link Italia Via Nino Bonnet n. 6/B, 20154, Milano, Italy TEL: 39-02-2900-0676 FAX: 39-02-2900-1723 URL: www.dlink.it E-MAIL: info@dlink.it</p>
Japan	<p>D-Link Japan 10F, 8-8-15 Nishi-Gotanda, Shinagawa-ku, Tokyo 141, Japan TEL: 81-3-5434-9678 FAX: 81-3-5434-9868 URL: www.d-link.co.jp E-MAIL: kida@d-link.co.jp</p>
Netherlands	<p>D-Link Benelux Fellenoord 130 5611 ZB, Eindhoven, The Netherlands TEL: 31-40-2668713 FAX: 31-40-2668666 URL: www.d-link-benelux.nl & www.dlink-benelux.be E-MAIL: info@dlink-benelux.nl & info@dlink-benelux.be</p>
Norway	<p>D-Link Norway Waldemar Thranesgate 77, 0175 Oslo, Norway TEL: 47-22-99-18-90 FAX: 47-22-20-70-39 SUPPORT: 800-10-610 URL: www.dlink.no</p>
Russia	<p>D-Link Russia Michurinski Prospekt 49, 117607 Moscow, Russia TEL: 7-095-737-3389 & 7-095-737-3492 FAX: 7-095-737-3390 URL: www.dlink.ru E-MAIL: vl@dlink.ru</p>
Singapore	<p>D-Link International 1 International Business Park, #03-12 The Synergy, Singapore 609917 TEL: 6-6774-6233 FAX: 6-6774-6322 E-MAIL: info@dlink.com.sg URL: www.dlink-intl.com</p>
South Africa	<p>D-Link South Africa Unit 2, Parkside, 86 Oak Avenue, Highveld Technopark, Centurion, Gauteng, South Africa TEL: 27-12-665-2165 FAX: 27-12-665-2186 URL: www.d-link.co.za E-MAIL: attie@d-link.co.za</p>
Spain	<p>D-Link Iberia (Spain and Portugal) Sabino de Arana, 56 bajos, 08028 Barcelona, Spain TEL: 34 93 409 0770 FAX: 34 93 491 0795 URL: www.dlink.es E-MAIL: info@dlink.es</p>
Sweden	<p>D-Link Sweden P. O. Box 15036, S-167 15 Bromma, Sweden TEL: 46-8-564-61900 FAX: 46-8-564-61901 URL: www.dlink.se E-MAIL: info@dlink.se</p>

Taiwan	D-Link Taiwan 2F, No. 119 Pao-chung Road, Hsin-tien, Taipei, Taiwan TEL: 886-2-2910-2626 FAX: 886-2-2910-1515 URL: www.dlinktw.com.tw E-MAIL: dssqa@tsc.dlinktw.com.tw
Turkey	D-Link Middle East Deniz Bilgisayar, Buyukdere Cad. Naci Kasim Sk., No. 5 Mecidiyekoy, Istanbul, Turkey TEL: 90-212-213-3400 FAX: 90-212-213-3420 E-MAIL: smorovati@dlink-me.com
U.A.E.	D-Link Middle East CHS Aptec (Dubai), P.O. Box 33550 Dubai, United Arab Emirates TEL: 971-4-366-885 FAX: 971-4-355-941 E-MAIL: Wxavier@dlink-me.com
U.K.	D-Link Europe (United Kingdom) Ltd 4 th Floor, Merit House, Edgware Road, Colindale, London NW9 5AB United Kingdom TEL: 44-020-8731-5555 SALES: 44-020-8731-5550 FAX: 44-020-8731-5511 SALES: 44-020-8731-5551 BBS: 44 (0) 181-235-5511 URL: www.dlink.co.uk E-MAIL: info@dlink.co.uk
U.S.A.	D-Link U.S.A. 17595 Mt. Herrmann Street, Fountain Valley, CA 92708, USA TEL: 1-714-885-6000 FAX: 1-866-743-4905 INFO: 1-877-453-5465 URL: www.dlink.com E-MAIL: tech@dlink.com & support@dlink.com